



*M Dawson.*

TRAVELS  
IN  
NORTH AMERICA,  
IN THE YEARS 1841-2,  
WITH  
GEOLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS  
ON  
THE UNITED STATES,  
CANADA, AND NOVA SCOTIA.

~~~~~  
BY CHARLES LYELL, ESQ., F.R.S.  
AUTHOR OF THE PRINCIPLES OF GEOLOGY.  
~~~~~

WITHOUT THE LARGER PLATES.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

NEW YORK:  
WILEY & HALSTED,  
No. 851 BROADWAY.  
1856.



E165

L976

~~139363~~

LYELL C.



Tl

GEORGE TICKNOR, ESQ.,

OF BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS.  

---

MY DEAR MR. TICKNOR,

I am glad to have your permission to dedicate these volumes to you, in remembrance of the many happy days spent in your society, and in that of your family and literary friends at Boston; a remembrance which would be without alloy, were it not for my frequent regrets that the broad Atlantic should separate so many congenial souls whom we both of us number among our friends in Europe and America.

Believe me,

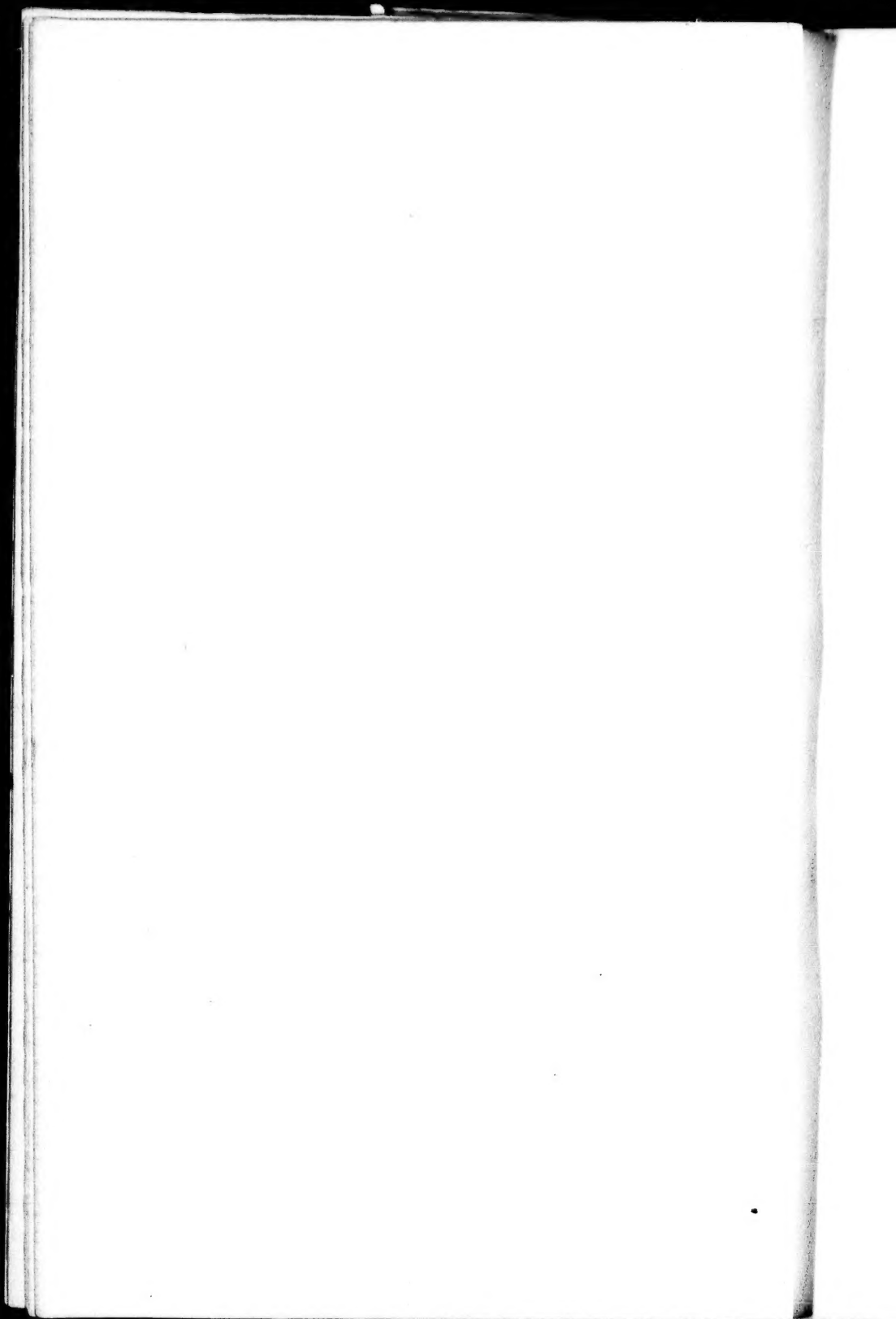
With feelings of great regard,

Ever faithfully yours,

CHARLES LYELL.

London, June 12, 1845.







## PREFACE.

---

THE reader is reminded that the general map of the geology of the United States and Canada forms the frontispiece of the second volume, and that the line of my route is traced upon it in the manner described in the explanation of the map at Vol II. p. 238

As the present work embraces a great variety of subjects to which my thoughts were turned during my travels in North America, I have endeavoured to confine myself as far as possible to the communication of such scientific matter as I thought might be of interest to the general reader. For a more detailed account of my geological observations alluded to in the course of these volumes, I must refer to the following published papers and abstracts of memoirs read to the Geological Society of London.

1. Letter to Dr. Fitton on the Blossberg Coal District and Stigmæria: *Proceedings of the Geological Society*, vol. iii. p. 554. 1841.
2. Recession of the Falls of Niagara: *Ibid.* vol. iii. p. 595. 1842. Resumed, vol. iv. p. 19. 1843.
3. Tertiary Formations in Virginia and other parts of the United States: *Ibid.* vol. iii. p. 735. 1842.
4. Fossil Foot-Prints of Birds and Impressions of Rain-drops in Connecticut Valley. *Ibid.* vol. iii. p. 793. 1842.
5. Tertiary Strata of Martha's Vineyard in Massachusetts: *Ibid.* vol. iv. p. 31. 1843.
6. On the Geological Position of the *Mastodon giganteus*, and other Remains at Big Bone Lick, Kentucky, and other Localities in the United States. *Ibid.* vol. iv. p. 36. 1843.



7. On upright Fossil Trees found in the Coal Strata of Cumberland, Nova Scotia : *Silliman's Journal*, vol. xlv. No. 2. p. 353. 1843.
8. Coal Formations, Gypsum, and Marine Limestones of Nova Scotia : *Ibid.* p. 356.
9. Bed of Plumbago and Anthracite in Mica-schist, near Worcester, Massachusetts, with Appendix containing Analyses by Dr. Percy : *Quarterly Journ. of Geol. Soc.* No. 2. p. 416. May, 1845.
10. Cretaceous Strata of New Jersey, with Appendix, on the Fossil Corals of the same, by Mr. Lonsdale : *Ibid.* No. 1. p. 301. Feb. 1845.
11. Miocene Formations of Virginia and North Carolina, &c., with Appendix, on Fossil Corals, by Mr. Lonsdale : read to the Geol. Soc., March, 1845. Preparing for publication, *Ibid.* No. 4.
12. On the White Limestone of South Carolina and Georgia, and the Eocene Strata of other parts of the U. S., with Appendix, on the Corals, by Mr. Lonsdale : read to the Geol. Soc., March, 1845. Preparing for publication, *Ibid.* No. 4.

Abstracts of most of these papers have also appeared in Silliman's "American Journal of Science and Arts," for the corresponding years.

London, June 14th, 1845.



# CONTENTS OF VOLUME I.

## CHAPTER I

PAGE

Voyage.—Harbour of Halifax.—Excursions near Boston.—Difference of Plants from European Species, and Correspondence of Marine Shells.—Resemblance of Drift, Erratics, and Furrowed Rocks, to those of Sweden.—Springfield.—New Haven.—Scenery of the Hudson.—Albany.—Geological Surveys.—Mohawk Valley.—Ancient or Silurian Formations.—Prosperity and rapid Progress of the People.—Lake Ontario.—Tortoises.—Fossil Remains of Mastodon. ....	1
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---

## CHAPTER II.

Distant and near View of the Falls of Niagara.—Whether the Falls have receded from Queenston to their present Site.—Geographical Features of the Region.—Course of the River above and below the Falls.—Recent Proofs of Erosion.—Historical Data in the Works of Hennepin and Kalm.—Geological Evidence derived from Fluvatile Strata or Remnants of an old River-bed in Goat-Island and elsewhere.—Difficulty of computing the Rate of the Retrograde Movement.—Varying Hardness and Thickness of the Rocks undermined.—Future Recession.—Age of the Drift and Limestone Escarpments.—Successive changes which preceded and accompanied the origin of the Falls.—Reflections on the Lapse of past Time. ....	22
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

## CHAPTER III.

Tour from the Niagara to the Northern Frontier of Pennsylvania.—Ancient Gypsiferous Formation of New York.—Fossil Mastodon at Geneseo.—Scenery.—Sudden Growth of New Towns.—Coal of Blossberg, and resemblance to British	
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--



Coal-Measures.—Stigmaria.—Humming Birds.—Nomenclature of Places.—Helderberg Mountains and Fossils.—Refractory Tenants.—Travelling in the States.—Politeness of Women.—Canal Boat.—Domestic Service.—Progress of Civilisation.—Philadelphia.—Fire-engines.....	44
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

## CHAPTER IV.

Excursion to New Jersey.—Cretaceous Rocks compared to European.—General Analogy of Fossils, and Distinctness of Species.—Tour to the Anthracite Region of the Alleghanies in Pennsylvania.—Long parallel Ridges and Valleys of these Mountains.—Pottsville.—Absence of Smoke.—Fossil Plants same as in Bituminous Coal.—Stigmaria.—Great Thickness of Strata.—Origin of Anthracite.—Vast Area of the Appalachian Coal-Field.—Progressive Debituminization of coal from West to East.—General Remarks on the different Groups of Rocks between the Atlantic and the Mississippi.—Law of Structure of the Appalachian chain discovered by the Professors Rogers.—Increased Folding and Dislocation of Strata on the South-eastern flank of the Appalachians.—Theory of the Origin of this Mountain chain.....	62
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

## CHAPTER V.

Wooded Ridges of the Alleghany Mountains.—German Patois in Pennsylvania.—Lehigh Summit Mine.—Effects of Ice during a Flood in the Delaware.—Election of a Governor at Trenton and at Philadelphia.—Journey to Boston.—Autumnal Tints of the Foliage.—Boston the Seat of Commerce, of Government, and of a University.—Lectures at the Lowell Institute.—Influence of Oral Instruction in Literature and Science.—Fees of Public Lecturers.—Education Funds sunk in costly Buildings.—Advantages of anti-building clauses.—Blind Asylum.—Lowell Factory.—National Schools.—Equality of Sects.—Society in Boston.....	81
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----

## CHAPTER VI.

Fall of Snow and Sleigh-driving at Boston.—Journey to New Haven.—Ichthyolites of Durham, Connecticut.—Age of Red Sandstone.—Income of Farmers.—Baltimore.—Washington.—National Museum.—Natural Impediments to the Growth of Washington.—Why chosen for the Capital.—Richmond, Virginia.—Effects of Slave Labour.—Low Region	
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--



# CONTENTS.

V  
PAGE

on the Atlantic Border, occupied by Tertiary Strata.—In  
fusorial Bed at Richmond.—Miocene Shells and Corals in  
the Cliffs of the James River compared with Fossils of the  
European Crag and Faluns.—Analogy of Forms and Differ-  
ence of Species.—Proportion of Species.—Commencement  
of the present Geographical Distribution of Mollusca..... 99

## CHAPTER VII.

Pine Barrens of Virginia and North Carolina.—Railway Train  
stopped by Snow and Ice.—The great Dismal Swamp.—  
Soil formed entirely of Vegetable Matter.—Rises higher than  
the contiguous firm Land.—Buried Timber.—Lake in the  
Middle.—The Origin of Coal illustrated by the Great Dis-  
mal.—Objections to the Theory of an ancient Atmosphere  
highly charged with Carbonic Acid..... 112

## CHAPTER VIII.

Tour to Charleston, South Carolina.—Facilities of Locomo-  
tion.—Augusta.—Voyage down the Savannah River.—Shell  
Bluff.—Slave Labour.—Fever and Ague.—Millhaven.—Pine  
Forests of Georgia.—Alligators and Land Tortoises.—Warmth  
of Climate in January.—Tertiary Strata on the Savannah.—  
Fossil Remains of Mastodon and Mylodon near Savannah.—  
Passports required of Slaves.—Cheerfulness of the Negroes. 122

## CHAPTER IX.

Return to Charleston.—Fossil Human Skeleton.—Geographical  
Distribution of Quadrupeds in North America.—Severe  
Frost in 1835 in South Carolina.—White Limestone of the  
Cooper River and Santee Canal.—Referred to the Eocene  
Period, not intermediate between Tertiary and Chalk.—  
Lime-sinks.—Species of Shells common to Eocene Strata in  
America and Europe.—Causes of the increased Insalubrity  
of the Low Region of South Carolina.—Condition of the  
Slave Population.—Cheerfulness of the Negroes, their  
Vanity.—State of Animal Existence.—Invalidity of Mar-  
riages.—The coloured Population multiply faster than the  
Whites.—Effect of the Interference of Abolitionists.—Law  
against Education.—Gradual Emancipation equally desirable  
for the Whites and the Coloured Race..... 136



## CHAPTER X.

Wilmington, North Carolina.—Mount Vernon.—Return to Philadelphia.—Reception of Mr. Dickens.—Museum and Fossil Human Bones.—Penitentiary.—Churches.—Religious Excitement.—Coloured People of Fortune.—Obstacles to their obtaining Political and Social Equality.—No natural Antipathy between the Races.—Negro Reservations..... 156

## CHAPTER XI.

Philadelphia.—Financial Crisis.—Payment of State Dividends suspended.—General Distress and Private Losses of the Americans.—Debt of Pennsylvania.—Public Works.—Direct Taxes.—Deficient Revenue.—Bad Faith and Confiscations.—Irresponsible Executive.—Loan Refused by European Capitalists in 1842.—Good Faith of Congress during the War in 1812-14.—Effects of Universal Suffrage.—Fraudulent Voting.—Aliens.—Solveny and Good Faith of the Majority of the States.—Confidence of American Capitalists.—Reform of the Electoral Body.—General Progress of Society, and Prospects of the Republic..... 171

## CHAPTER XII.

New York City.—Geology.—Distribution of Erratic Rocks in Long Island.—Residence in New York.—Effects on Society of increased Intercourse of distant States.—Separation of the Capital and Metropolis.—Climate.—Geology of the Taconic Mountains.—Stratum of Plumbago and Anthracite in the Mica Schist of Worcester.—Theory of its Origin.—Lectures for the Working Classes.—Fossil Foot-Prints of Birds in Red Sandstone.—Mount Holyoke.—Visit to the Island of Martha's Vineyard.—Fossil Walrus.—Indians..... 189

## CHAPTER XIII.

Meeting of Association of American Geologists at Boston.—Popular Libraries in New England.—Large Sale of Literary Works in the United States.—American Universities.—Harvard College, near Boston.—English Universities.—Peculiarities of their System.—Historical Sketch of the Causes of the Peculiarities not of Medieval Origin.—Collegiate Corporations.—Their altered Relations to the English Universities after the Reformation.—Constitution given to Oxford by Leicester and Laud.—System of Public Teaching,

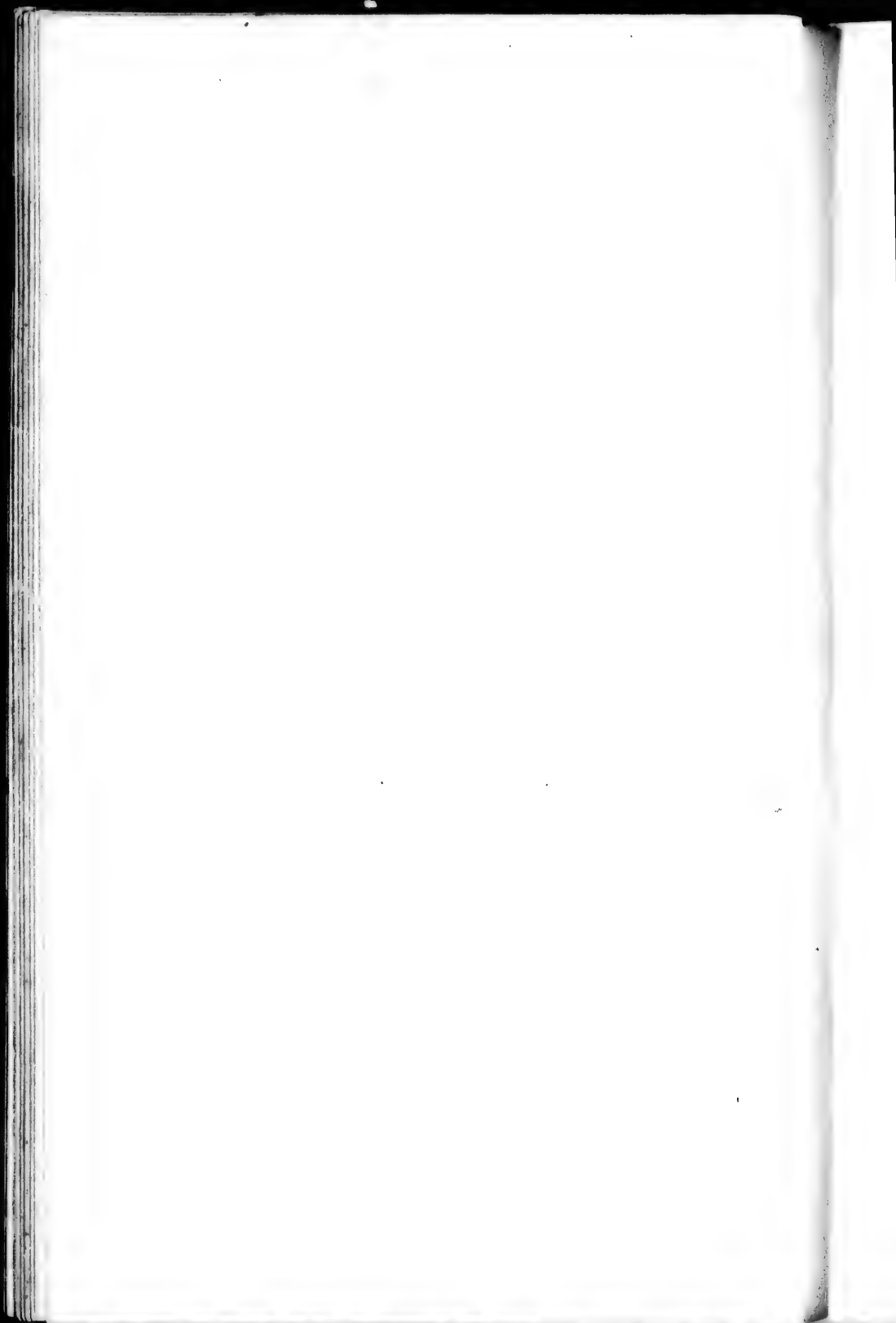


# CONTENTS.

VII  
PAGE

how superseded by the Collegiate.—Effects of the Change.—	
Oxford Examination Statute of 1800.—Its subsequent Modifi-	
cation and Results.—Rise of Private Tutors at Oxford and	
Cambridge.—Consequences of this Innovation.—Struggle at	
Oxford in 1839 to restore the Professional System.—Causes	
of its Rejection.—Tractarianism.—Supremacy of Ecclesias-	
tics.—Youthful Examiners.—Cambridge, advocacy of the	
System followed there.—Influence of the English Academi-	
cal Plan on the Cultivation of the Physical Sciences, and	
all Branches of Progressive Knowledge.—Remedies and	
Reforms.....	208







JOURNAL  
OF A  
TOUR IN NORTH AMERICA  
IN 1841--2.

---

CHAPTER I.

*Voyage.—Harbour of Halifax.—Excursions near Boston.—Difference of Plants from European Species, and Correspondence of Marine Shells.—Resemblance of Drift, Erratics, and furrowed Rocks, to those of Sweden.—Springfield.—New Haven.—Scenery of the Hudson.—Albany.—Geological Surveys.—Mohawk Valley.—Ancient or Silurian Formations.—Prosperity and rapid Progress of the People.—Lake Ontario.—Tortoises.—Fossil Remains of Mastodon.*

*July 20, 1841.*—Sailed from Liverpool for Boston, U. S., in the steam-ship Acadia, which held her course as straight as an arrow from Cape Clear in Ireland to Halifax in Nova Scotia, making between 220 and 280 miles per day.

After the monotony of a week spent on the open sea, we were amused when we came near the great banks which extend from the southern point of Newfoundland, by the rapid passage of the steamer through alternate belts of stationary fog and clear spaces warmed and lighted up with bright sunshine. Looking at the dense fog from the intermediate sunny



regions, we could hardly be persuaded that we were not beholding land, so distinct and well-defined was its outline, and such the varieties of light and shade, that some of our Canadian fellow-passengers compared it to the patches of cleared and uncleared country on the north shore of the St. Lawrence. These fogs are caused by the meeting, over the great banks, of the warm waters of the gulf stream flowing from the south, and colder currents, often charged with floating ice, from the north, by which very opposite states in the relative temperature of the sea and atmosphere are produced in spaces closely contiguous. In places where the sea is warmer than the air, fogs are generated.

When the eye has been accustomed for many days to the deep blue of the central Atlantic, the greener tint of the sea over the banks is refreshing. We were within 150 miles of the southern point of Newfoundland when we crossed these banks, over which the shallowest water is said to be about thirty-five fathoms deep. The bottom consists of fine sand, which must be often ploughed up by icebergs, for several of them were seen aground here by some of our passengers on the 31st of July last. The captain tells us that the worst months for crossing the Atlantic to and from Halifax are February and March, and the most agreeable ones, July, August, and September. The nearer we approached the American coast, the more beautiful and brilliant were the sunsets. We sometimes compared the changing hues of the clouds and sky to the blue and red colours in a pigeon's neck.

*July 31.*—On the eleventh day of our voyage we sailed directly into the harbour of Halifax, which by its low hills of granite and slate, covered with birch and



spruce fir, reminded me more of a Norwegian fiord, such as that of Christiania, than any other place I had seen. I landed here for six hours, with my wife, during which we had time to drive about the town, and see the museum, where I was shown a large fossil tree filled with sandstone, recently sent from strata containing coal in the interior. I resolved to examine these before returning to England, as they appeared, by the description given us, to afford the finest examples yet known in the world of petrified trees occurring in their natural or erect position.

Letters, which we had written on the voyage, being now committed to the post-office at Halifax, were taken up next day by the Caledonia steam-ship for England, and in less than a month from the time of our quitting London, our friends in remote parts of Great Britain (in Scotland and in Devonshire) were reading an account of the harbour of Halifax, of the Micmac Indians with their Esquimaux features, paddling about in canoes of birch bark, and other novelties seen on the shores of the New World. It required the aid of the recently established railroads at home, as well as the Atlantic steam-packets, to render such rapid correspondence possible.

*August 2.*—A run of about thirty hours carried us to Boston, which we reached in twelve and a half days after leaving Liverpool. The heat here is intense, the harbour and city beautiful, the air clear and entirely free from smoke, so that the shipping may be seen far off, at the end of many of the streets. The Tremont Hotel merits its reputation as one of the best in the world. Recollecting the contrast of every thing French when I first crossed the straits of Dover, I am aston-



ished, after having traversed the wide ocean, at the resemblance of every thing I see and hear to things familiar at home. It has so often happened to me in our own island, without travelling into those parts of Wales, Scotland, or Ireland, where they talk a perfectly distinct language, to encounter provincial dialects which it is difficult to comprehend, that I wonder at finding the people here so very English. If the metropolis of New England be a type of a large part of the United States, the industry of Sam Slick, and other writers, in collecting together so many diverting Americanisms and so much original slang, is truly great, or their inventive powers still greater.

I made excursions to the neighbourhood of Boston, through Roxbury, Cambridge, and other places, with a good botanist, to whom I had brought letters of introduction. Although this is not the best season for wild flowers, the entire distinctness of the trees, shrubs, and plants, from those on the other side of the Atlantic, affords a constant charm to the European traveller. We admired the drooping American elm, a picturesque tree; and saw several kinds of sumach, oaks with deeply indented leaves, dwarf birches, and several wild roses. Large commons without heaths reminded me of the singular fact that no species of heath is indigenous on the American continent. We missed also the small "crimson-tipped" daisy on the green lawns, and were told that they have been often cultivated with care, but are found to wither when exposed to the dry air and bright sun of this climate. When weeds so common with us cannot be reared here, we cease to wonder at the dissimilarity of the native flora of the New World. Ye whenever the aboriginal forests are



cleared, we see orchards, gardens, and arable lands, filled with the same fruit trees, the same grain and vegetables, as in Europe, so bountifully has Nature provided that the plants most useful to man should be capable, like himself, of becoming cosmopolites.

*Aug. 5.*—Went by railway to deliver letters and pay some visits at Nahant, situated on a promontory of the coast, about ten miles N.E. of Boston, where I examined the rocks of hornblende and syenite, traversed by veins of greenstone and basalt which often intersect each other. The surface of the rocks, wherever the incumbent gravel or drift has been recently removed, is polished, furrowed, and striated, as in the north of Europe, especially in Sweden, or in Switzerland, near the great glaciers.

On the beach or bar of sand and shingle, which unites the peninsula with the main land, I collected many recent shells, and was immediately struck with the agreement of several of the most abundant species with our ordinary British littoral shells. Among them were *Purpura lapillus*, *Turbo* (*Littorina*) *rudis*, *Mytilus edulis*, *Modiola papuana*, *Mya arenaria*, besides others which were evidently geographical representatives of our common species; such as *Nassa trivittata*, allied to our *N. reticulata*, *Turbo palliatus* Say, allied to, if not the same as, our common *Turbo neritoides*, &c. I afterwards added largely to the list of corresponding species and forms, and Dr. Gould of Boston showed me his collection of the marine shells of Massachusetts and the adjoining ocean, and gave me a list of 70 out of 197 species which he regarded as identical with shells from Europe. After comparing these on my return, with the aid of several able con-



chologists, I am convinced that the greater part of these identifications are correct; and, in the place of some considered as doubtful, there are others not enumerated in Dr. Gould's catalogue, which may be substituted, so as to establish a result for which few geologists were prepared, viz. that one third, or about 35 per cent, of the marine shells of this part of America are the same as those on the opposite side of the Atlantic; a large part of the remainder consisting of geographical representatives, and a fraction only of the whole affording characteristic or peculiar forms. I shall have many opportunities of pointing out the geological bearing of this curious, and to me very unexpected, fact.

Several excavations made for railways in the neighbourhood of Boston, through mounds of stratified and unstratified gravel and sand, and also through rock, enabled me to recognise the exact resemblance of this part of New England to the less elevated regions of Norway and Sweden, where granitic rocks are strewn over irregularly with sand and blocks of stone, forming a gently undulating country with numerous ponds and small lakes. Indeed, had I not been constantly reminded that I was in America, by the distinctness of the plants, and the birds flying about in the woods, the geological phenomena would have led me to suppose myself in Scotland, or some other part of Northern Europe. These heaps of sand and pebbles are entirely devoid of shells or organic remains, and occasionally huge rounded blocks, brought from a great distance, rest upon them, or are buried in them. The heaps are mainly composed, however, of the materials of neighbouring rocks. At some points the superficial gravel has been pierced to the depth of 100, and even more



than 200, feet, without the solid rock being reached ; but more commonly the loose detritus is of moderate thickness, and, when removed, a polished surface of granite, gneiss, or mica schist, is exposed, exhibiting a smooth surface, with occasional scratches or straight parallel furrows. Here and there, rounded and flattened domes of smoothed rock, similar in shape to the "*roches moutonnées*" which border the Alpine glaciers, are observable. The day after I landed, an excavation recently made for the monument now erecting on Bunker's Hill, enabled me to recognise the likeness of this drift to that of Scandinavia, and every day since I have seen fresh proofs of the complete correspondence of these remote districts. Professor Hitchcock has shown that in New England the parallel grooves or furrows have a general direction nearly north and south, but usually ten or fifteen degrees to the west of north. I have already seen, at Nahant and elsewhere, some marked deviations from this rule, which, however, is correct in the main, and these markings have been found to prevail at all heights in New England, even in mountains more than 2000 feet high.

I have already observed several rounded boulders with one flat side scratched and furrowed, as if it had been held firmly in one position when frozen into ice, and rubbed against a hard rocky bottom.

There is here, as in Sweden, so great an extent of low country remote from any high mountains, that we cannot attribute the effects above described to true glaciers descending in the open air from the higher regions to the plains. If we adopt the glacial theory, we must suppose the country to have been submerged, and that the northern drift was brought here by large bodies of



floating ice, which, by repeatedly running aground on the bottom of the sea for thousands of years, and forcing along the sand under their enormous weight, polished and furrowed the rocky bottom, and on the melting of the ice, let fall their burden of stones or erratic blocks, together with mud and pebbles.

When we recollect that Boston is situated in the latitude of Rome, or in that of the north of Spain, and that the northern drift and erratic blocks in Europe are first met with about the 50th degree of latitude, and then increase as we travel towards the pole; there seems ground for presuming, that the greater cold which now marks the climate of North America had begun to prevail long before the present distribution of land and sea in the northern hemisphere, and before the present climates were established. Perhaps, even in the glacial period of geology, the lines of equal winter's cold, when drawn from Europe to North America, made a curve of about  $10^{\circ}$  to the southward, as in our own times.

*Aug. 9.*—After a week spent very agreeably at Boston, we started for New Haven in Connecticut, going the first hundred miles on an excellent railway in about five hours, for three dollars each. The speed of the railways in this State, the most populous in the Union, is greater than elsewhere, and I am told that they are made with American capital, and for the most part pay good interest. There are no tunnels, and so few embankments that they afford the traveller a good view of the country. The number of small lakes and ponds, such as are seen in the country between Lund and Stockholm, in Sweden, affords a pleasing variety to the scenery, and they are as useful



as they are ornamental. The water is beautifully clear, and when frozen to the depth of many feet in winter, supplies those large cubical masses of ice, which are sawed and transported to the principal cities throughout the Union, and even shipped to Calcutta, crossing the equator twice in their outward voyage. It has been truly said, that this part of New England owes its wealth to its industry, the soil being sterile, the timber small, and there being no staple commodities of native growth, except ice and granite.

In the inland country between Boston and Springfield, we saw some sand-hills like the dunes of blown sand near the coast, which were probably formed on the sea-side before the country was elevated to its present height. We passed many fields of maize, or Indian corn, before arriving at Springfield, which is a beautiful village, with fine avenues of the American elm on each side of the wide streets. From Springfield we descended the river Connecticut in a steamboat. Its banks were covered with an elegant species of golden rod (*Solidago*), with its showy bright yellow flowers. I have been hitherto disappointed in seeing no large timber, and I am told that it was cut down originally in New England without mercy, because it served as an ambush for the Indians, since which time it has never recovered, being consumed largely for fuel. The Americans of these Eastern States who visit Europe have, strange to say, derived their ideas of noble trees more from those of our principal English parks, than from the native forests of the New World.

I visited Rocky Hill, near Hartford in Connecticut, where the contact is seen of a large mass of columnar trap with red sandstone. In a large quarry, the dis-



tinct joints which divide the sandstone contrast finely with the divisional planes which separate the basalt into pillars. The evidence of alteration by heat at the point of contact is very marked, and has been well described by Dr. Silliman in a paper on the rocks of this place.

The city of New Haven, with a population of 14,000 souls, possesses, like Springfield, fine avenues of trees in its streets, which mingle agreeably with the buildings of the university, and the numerous churches, of which we counted near twenty steeples. When attending service, according to the Presbyterian form, in the College chapel on Sunday, I could scarcely believe I was not in Scotland.

In an expedition to the north of the town, accompanied by Professor Silliman, his son, and Mr. Percival, a geologist to whom the execution of the State Survey of Connecticut was entrusted, I examined the red sandstone (*New Red*) and intrusive volcanic rocks (basalt and greenstone) of this neighbourhood. Dykes of various sizes intersect the stratified rocks, and occasionally flow in great tabular masses nearly parallel to the strata, so as to have the picturesque effect of cappings of columnar basalt, although Mr. Percival has shown that they are in reality intrusive, and alter the strata in contact both above and below. The East and West Rocks near New Haven, crowned with trap, bear a strong resemblance in their outline and general aspect to Salisbury Crags, and other hills of the same structure near Edinburgh.

We saw in Hampden parish, lat.  $41^{\circ} 19'$ , on the summit of a high hill of sandstone, a huge erratic block of greenstone, 100 feet in circumference, and pro



jecting 11 feet above ground. Other large transported fragments have been met with more than 1000 feet above the level of the sea, and every where straight parallel furrows appear on the smooth surface of the rocks, where the superficial gravel and sand are removed.

In a garden at New Haven (August 13.) I saw, for the first time, a humming bird on the wing. It was fluttering round the flowers of a *Gladiolus*. In the suburbs we gathered a splendid wild flower, the scarlet *Lobelia*, and a large sweet-scented water-lily. The only singing bird which we heard was a thrush with a red breast, which they call here the robin. The grasshoppers were as numerous and as noisy as in Italy. As we returned in the evening over some low marshy ground, we saw several fire-flies, showing an occasional bright spark. They are small beetles resembling our male glow-worms (*Lampyris* Linn., *Pyrolampis scintillans* Say).

Aug. 13.—A large steamer carried us from New Haven to New York, a distance of about ninety miles, in less than six hours. We had Long Island on the one side, and the main land on the other, the scenery at first tame from the width of the channel, but very lively and striking when this became more contracted, and at length we seemed to sail into the very suburbs of the great city itself, passing between green islands, some of them covered with buildings and villas. We had the same bright sunshine which we have enjoyed ever since we landed, and an atmosphere unsullied by the chimnies of countless steam-boats, factories, and houses, of a population of more than 300,000 souls,



thanks to the remoteness of all fuel save anthracite and wood.

Next day, I went with Mr. Redfield, well known by his meteorological writings, across the Passaic river to Newark in New Jersey, where we examined quarries of the New Red Sandstone, and saw the surfaces of the strata ripple-marked, and with impressions of rain-drops. They also exhibit casts on their under sides of cracks, which have been formed by the shrinking of the layers of clay when drying. These appearances, together with imbedded fragments of carbonized fossil wood, such as may have been drifted on a beach, bespeak the littoral character of the formation on which, in many places in Connecticut and Massachusetts, the fossil footsteps of birds, to which I shall afterwards allude, have been found imprinted.

*Aug. 16.*—Sailed in the splendid new steam-ship the *Troy*, in company with about 500 passengers, from New York to Albany, 145 miles, at the rate of about 16 miles an hour. When I was informed that "seventeen of these vessels went to a mile," it seemed incredible, but I found that in fact the deck measured 300 feet in length. To give a sufficient supply of oxygen to the anthracite, the machinery is made to work two bellows, which blow a strong current of air into the furnace. The Hudson is an arm of the sea or estuary, about twelve fathoms deep, above New York, and its waters are inhabited by a curious mixture of marine and fresh-water plants and mollusca. At first on our left, or on the western bank, we had a lofty precipice of columnar basalt from 400 to 600 feet in height, called the Palisades, extremely picturesque. This basalt rests on sandstone, which is of the same age as



that before mentioned near New Haven, but has an opposite or westward dip. On arriving at the Highlands, the winding channel is closed in by steep hills of gneiss on both sides, and the vessel often holds her course as if bearing directly on the land. The stranger cannot guess in which direction he is to penetrate the rocky gorge, but he soon emerges again into a broad valley, the blue Catskill mountains appearing in the distance. The scenery deserves all the praise which has been lavished upon it, and when the passage is made in nine hours it is full of variety and contrast.

At Albany, a town finely situated on the Hudson, and the capital of the State of New York, I found several geologists employed in the Government survey, and busily engaged in forming a fine museum, to illustrate the organic remains and mineral products of the country. This State is divided into about the same number of counties as England, and is not very inferior to it in extent of territory. The legislature four years ago voted a considerable sum of money, more than 200,000 dollars, or 40,000 guineas, for exploring its Natural History and mineral structure; and at the end of the first two years several of the geological surveyors, of whom four principal ones were appointed, reported, among other results, their opinion, that no coal would ever be discovered in their respective districts. This announcement caused no small disappointment, especially as the neighbouring state of Pennsylvania was very rich in coal. Accordingly, during my tour, I heard frequent complaints that, not satisfied with their inability to find coal themselves, the surveyors had decided that no one else would ever be able to detect any, having had the presumption to pass a sentence of future



sterility on the whole land. Yet, in spite of these expressions of ill-humour, it was satisfactory to observe that the rashness of private speculators had received a wholesome check; and large sums of money, which for twenty years previously had been annually squandered in trials for coal in rocks below the carboniferous series, were henceforth saved to the public. There can be little doubt that the advantage derived to the resources of the State by the cessation of this annual outlay alone, and the more profitable direction since given to private enterprise, is sufficient to indemnify the country, on mere utilitarian grounds, for the sum so munificently expended by the government on geological investigations. The resemblance of certain Silurian rocks on the banks of the Hudson river to the bituminous shales of the true Coal formation was the chief cause of the deception which misled the mining adventurers of New York. I made an excursion southwards from Albany, with a party of geologists, to Normanskill Creek, where there is a waterfall, to examine these black slates, containing graptolites, trilobites, and other Lower Silurian fossils. By persons ignorant of the order of superposition and of fossil remains, they might easily be mistaken for Coal measures, especially as some small particles of anthracite, perhaps of animal origin, do actually occur in them.

On leaving Albany, I determined so to plan my route to the Falls of Niagara and back again to the Hudson, as to enable me to see by the way the entire succession of mineral groups from the lowest Silurian up to the coal of Pennsylvania. Mr. James Hall, to whose hands the north-west division of the geological survey of New York had been confided, kindly offered himself as my



guide. Taking the railway to Schenectady, and along the Mohawk valley, we first stopped at Little Falls, where we examined the gneiss and the lowest Silurian sandstone resting upon it. We then pursued our journey along the line of the Erie Canal and the Mohawk River, stopping here and there to examine quarries of limestone, and making a short detour through the beautiful valley of Cedarville in Herkimer County, where there is a fine section of the strata. Afterwards we explored the picturesque ravine through which the Genesee flows at Rochester, the river descending by a succession of cataracts over the same rocks which are exposed farther westward on the Niagara. The excavations also made for the grand canal at Lockport afforded us a fine opportunity of seeing these older fossiliferous rocks laid open to view. At this point the barges laden with merchandise climb up, by a series of locks placed one above the other, to the table land in which Lake Erie is situated. In the course of this short tour, I became convinced that we must turn to the *New World* if we wish to see in perfection the oldest monuments of the earth's history, so far at least as relates to its earliest inhabitants. Certainly in no other country are these ancient strata developed on a grander scale, or more plentifully charged with fossils; and, as they are nearly horizontal, the order of their relative position is always clear and unequivocal. They exhibit, moreover, in their range from the Hudson River to the Niagara, some fine examples of the gradual manner in which certain sets of strata thin out when followed for hundreds of miles, while others previously wanting become intercalated in the series. Thus, for example, some of the limestones which are several hundred feet



thick in the Helderberg Hills, near Albany, are scarcely forty feet thick in the Niagara district; and on the other hand, the rocks over which the cataract of Niagara is precipitated, dwindle away to such insignificant dimensions when followed eastward to the hills S. W. of Albany, that their place in the series there can scarcely be recognised. Another interesting fact may be noticed as the result even of a cursory survey of the fossils of these North American rocks, namely, that while some of the species agree, the majority of them are not identical with those found in strata, which are their equivalents in age and position on the other side of the Atlantic. Some fossils which are identical, such as *Atrypa affinis*, *Leptaena depressa*, and *L. englypha*, are precisely those shells which have a great vertical and horizontal range in Europe,—species which were capable of surviving many successive changes in the earth's surface, and for the same reason enjoyed at certain periods a wide geographical range. It has been usually affirmed that in the rocks older than the carboniferous, the fossil fauna in different parts of the globe was almost every where the same; but, judging from the first assemblage of organic remains which I have seen here, it appears to me, that however close the general analogy of forms may be, there is evidence of the same law of variation in space as now prevails in the living creation.

A few years ago, it was a fatiguing tour of many weeks to reach the Falls of Niagara from Albany. We are now carried along at the rate of sixteen miles an hour, on a railway often supported on piles, through large swamps covered with aquatic trees and shrubs, or through dense forests, with occasional clearings where



orchards are planted by anticipation among the stumps, before they have even had time to run up a log-house. The traveller views with surprise, in the midst of so much unoccupied land, one flourishing town after another, such as Utica, Syracuse, and Auburn. At Rochester he admires the streets of large houses, inhabited by 20,000 souls, where the first settler built his log-cabin in the wilderness only twenty-five years ago. At one point our train stopped at a handsome new built station-house, and, looking out at one window, we saw a group of Indians of the Oncida tribe, lately the owners of the broad lands around, but now humbly offering for sale a few trinkets, such as baskets ornamented with porcupine quills, moccasins of moose-deer skin, and boxes of birch-bark. At the other window stood a well-dressed waiter handing ices and confectionary. When we reflect that some single towns, of which the foundations were laid by persons still living, can already number a population, equal to all the aboriginal hunter tribes who possessed the forests for hundreds of miles around, we soon cease to repine at the extraordinary revolution, however much we may commiserate the unhappy fate of the disinherited race. They who are accustomed to connect the romance of their travels in Europe or Asia with historical recollections and the monuments of former glory, with the study of masterpieces in the fine arts, or with grand and magnificent scenery, will hardly believe the romantic sensations which may be inspired by the aspect of this region, where very few points of picturesque beauty meet the eye, and where the aboriginal forest has lost its charm of savage wildness by the intrusion of railways and canals. The foreign naturalist indeed sees novelty in



every plant, bird, and insect; and the remarkable resemblances of the rocks at so great a distance from home are to him a source of wonder and instruction. But there are other objects of intense interest, to enliven or excite the imagination of every traveller. Here, instead of dwelling on the past, and on the signs of pomp and grandeur which have vanished, the mind is filled with images of coming power and splendour. The vast stride made by one generation in a brief moment of time, naturally disposes us to magnify and exaggerate the rapid rate of future improvement. The contemplation of so much prosperity, such entire absence of want and poverty, so many school-houses and churches, rising every where in the woods, and such a general desire of education, with the consciousness that a great continent lies beyond, which has still to be appropriated, fills the traveller with cheering thoughts and sanguine hopes. He may be reminded that there is another side to the picture, that where the success has been so brilliant and where large fortunes have been hastily realised, there will be rash speculations and bitter disappointments; but these ideas do not force themselves into the reveries of the passing stranger. He sees around him the solid fruits of victory, and forgets that many a soldier in the foremost ranks has fallen in the breach; and cold indeed would be his temperament if he did not sympathise with the freshness and hopefulness of a new country, and feel as men past the prime of life are accustomed to feel when in company with the young, who are full of health and buoyant spirits, of faith and confidence in the future.

*Aug. 24.*—In the suburbs of Rochester, Mr. Hall and I visited a spot where the remains of the great



Mastodon had been dug up from a bed of white shell-marl. I found fragments of the fossil teeth and ivory of one tusk, and ascertained that the accompanying shells were of recent species of the genera *Limnea*, *Planorbis*, *Valvata*, *Cyclas*, &c. We also examined the narrow ridge composed of sand and gravel between Rochester and Lake Ontario, which has been traced for a hundred miles, running nearly parallel to the lake, and from three to eight miles distant from it. It rises from ten to twenty feet above the general level of the surrounding plain of clay, and presents a steep slope to the north and south, affording an excellent road, like the sand-ridges or osars which I have seen in Sweden, and which are doubtless of similar origin. Geologists are all agreed that these and other similar ridges surrounding the great Canadian lakes, and occurring at different heights above them, were once lines of beach surrounding great bodies of water. Whether these consisted of lakes or seas,—how the water came to stand at so many different levels, and whether some of the ridges were not originally banks and bars of sand formed under water, are points which I shall discuss in the sequel.

While we were roaming along the shore of Lake Ontario, to compare the old ridge road with the modern beach, we saw several tortoises of different species basking in the sun on logs of drift wood in the shallow ponds connected with the lake. We caught one of these (*Testudo picta*), which has a gaily coloured shell, and I afterwards carried it a day's journey in the carriage, and then turned it out, to see whether, as I was told, it would know its way back to Lake Ontario. I am bound to admit that its instinct on this



occasion did not fail, for it made directly for a ravine, in the bottom of which was a stream that would lead it in time to the Genesee River, and this would carry it to its native lake, if it escaped destruction at the falls below Rochester, where the celebrated diver, Sam Patch, perished, after he had succeeded in throwing himself with impunity down several other great waterfalls. There is a fresh-water tortoise in Europe (*Testudo Europæa*), found in Hungary, Prussia, and Silesia, as far north as lat.  $50^{\circ}$  to  $52^{\circ}$ . It also occurs near Bordeaux, and in the north of Italy,  $44^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$  N. lat., which precisely corresponds with the latitude of Lake Ontario.

In moist places along the lake shore, and in the lanes and high roads, we saw numerous yellow butterflies (*Colias philodice*—*C. Europoma* of some authors) very like a British species. Sometimes forty clustering on a small spot resembled a plot of primroses, and as they rose altogether, and flew off slowly on every side, it was like the play of a beautiful fountain.

On our way home through the woods we stopped at the cabin of some new settlers near the lake, many miles from any neighbours, in the midst of a square clearing covered with blackened stumps, where not a single tree or shrub had been spared. The view was bounded on every side by a dense wall of dark wood striped with white by the vertical lines of the numerous tall and straight trees without side branches, and supporting a dark canopy of foliage. When we admired the forest, the settler's wife was pleased, but said, sighing, that she could not get her children to see any beauty in trees. They had never known the old



country, nor other friends, and were happier than she and her husband could be, though in their worldly concerns they were thriving, and had every reason to feel content, except when attacked by the ague, so common in the newly-cleared grounds.



## CHAPTER II.

*Distant and near View of the Falls of Niagara.—Whether the Falls have receded from Queenston to their present Site.—Geographical Features of the Region.—Course of the River above and below the Falls.—Recent Proofs of Erosion.—Historical Data in the Works of Hennepin and Kalm.—Geological Evidence derived from Fluvial Strata or Remnants of an old River-bed in Goat Island and elsewhere.—Difficulty of computing the Rate of the retrograde Movement.—Varying Hardness and Thickness of the Rocks undermined.—Future Recession.—Age of the Drift and Limestone Escarpments.—Successive Changes which preceded and accompanied the Origin of the Falls.—Reflections on the Lapse of past Time.*

Aug. 27.—WE first came in sight of the Falls of Niagara when they were about three miles distant. The sun was shining full upon them—no building in view—nothing but the green wood, the falling water, and the white foam. At that moment they appeared to me more beautiful than I had expected, and less grand; but after several days, when I had enjoyed a nearer view of the two cataracts, had listened to their thundering sound, and gazed on them for hours from above and below, and had watched the river foaming over the rapids, then plunging headlong into the dark pool,—and when I had explored the delightful island which divides the falls, where the solitude of the ancient forest is still unbroken, I at last learned by degrees to comprehend the wonders of the scene, and to feel its full magnificence.

Early in the morning after our arrival, I saw from the window of our hotel, on the American side, a long train of white vapoury clouds hanging over the deep



chasm below the falls. They were slightly tinted by the rays of the rising sun, and blown slowly northwards by a gentle breeze from the pool below the cataract, which was itself invisible from this point of view. No fog was rising from the ground, the sky was clear above; and as the day advanced, and the air grew warm, the vapours all disappeared. This scene reminded me of my first view of Mount Etna from Catania, at sunrise in the autumn of 1828, when I saw dense volumes of steam issuing from the summit of the highest crater in a clear blue sky, which, at the height of more than two miles above the sea, assumed at once the usual shape and hues of clouds in the upper atmosphere. These, too, vanished before noon, as soon as the sun's heat increased.

Etna presents us not merely with an image of the power of subterranean heat, but a record also of the vast period of time during which that power has been exerted. A majestic mountain has been produced by volcanic action, yet the time of which the volcano forms the register, however vast, is found by the geologist to be of inconsiderable amount, even in the modern annals of the earth's history. In like manner, the Falls of Niagara teach us not merely to appreciate the power of moving water, but furnish us at the same time with data for estimating the enormous lapse of ages during which that force has operated. A deep and long ravine has been excavated, and the river has required ages to accomplish the task, yet the same region affords evidence that the sum of these ages is as nothing, and as the work of yesterday, when compared to the antecedent periods, of which there are monuments in the same district.



It has long been a favourite subject of discussion whether the Falls were once situated seven miles farther north, or at Queenston. The ideal bird's-eye view given in the frontispiece may assist the reader who has not visited the spot to form a tolerably correct general notion of the geographical configuration of this country, which is very simple. The view has been constructed from a sketch published by Mr. Bakewell, in *Loudon's Magazine* for 1830, into which the geological representation of the rocks, as they appear on the surface and in the ravine of the Niagara, has been introduced from the State Survey by Mr. Hall.\* The platform, in a depression of which Lake Erie is situated, is more than 330 feet above Lake Ontario, and the descent from a higher to a lower level is sudden and abrupt at the escarpment called the Queenston heights. The strata throughout this whole region are nearly horizontal, but they have a gentle dip to the south of 25 feet in a mile. This inclination is sufficient to cause the different groups of rock to crop out one beneath the other, or come up to the surface in parallel zones, which may be traced for a great distance east and west through the state of New York and Canada. (See Map.) They all consist of different members of the Silurian series, the uppermost or newest being those nearest to Lake Erie. (See section fig. 4., p. 37.) In the bird's-eye view, the Niagara is seen bounded by

\* Mr. Bakewell gave me his original sketches in 1841, and I conceived the idea of combining his pictorial view with a geological representation of the rocks before I gave a lecture on the Niagara district at Boston, in October, 1841, in which, and in planning some of the other diagrams, and in discussing the theory of recession, I was assisted by Mr. Hall.



low banks where it issues from Lake Erie, and varying in width from one to three miles. It here resembles a prolongation of the tranquil lake, being interspersed with low wooded islands. This lake-like scenery continues for about fifteen miles, during which the fall of the river scarcely exceeds as many feet, but on reaching the rapids, it descends over a limestone bed about 50 feet in less than a mile, and is then thrown down about 165 feet perpendicularly at the Falls. The largest of these, called the Horseshoe Fall, is 1800 feet, or more than a third of a mile, broad, the island in the midst somewhat less in width, and the American Fall about 600 feet wide. The deep narrow chasm below the great cataract is from 200 to 400 yards wide, and 300 feet deep; and here in seven miles the river descends 100 feet, at the end of which it emerges from the gorge into the open and flat country, so nearly on a level with Lake Ontario that there is only a fall of about four feet in the seven additional miles which intervene between Queenston and the Lake. The great ravine is winding, and makes a turn nearly at right angles to itself at the whirlpool, where the Niagara sweeps round a large circular basin, but it is represented in the frontispiece as nearly straight, for the sake of showing the stratification; and its proportional height is purposely exaggerated. At some points the boundary cliffs are undermined on one side by the impetuous stream, but there is usually a talus at the base of the precipice, supporting a very ornamental fringe of trees.

It has long been the popular belief, from a mere cursory inspection of this district, that the Niagara once flowed in a shallow valley across the whole platform from the present site of the Falls to the Queenston



heights, where it is supposed the cataract was first situated, and that the river has been slowly eating its way backwards through the rocks for a distance of seven miles. According to this hypothesis, the Falls must have had originally nearly twice their present height, and must have been always diminishing in grandeur from age to age, as they will continue to do in future so long as the retrograde movement is prolonged. It becomes, therefore, a matter of no small curiosity and interest to inquire at what rate the work of excavation is now going on, and thus to obtain a measure for calculating how many thousands of years or centuries have been required to hollow out the chasm already excavated.

It is an ascertained fact, that the Falls do not remain absolutely stationary at the same point of space; and that they have shifted their position slightly during the last half century. Every observer will also be convinced that the small portion of the great ravine, which has been eroded within the memory of man, is so precisely identical in character with the whole gorge for seven miles below, that the river supplies an adequate cause for executing the task assigned to it, provided we grant sufficient time for its completion.

The waters, after cutting through strata of limestone, about fifty feet thick in the rapids, descend perpendicularly at the Falls over another mass of limestone about ninety feet thick, beneath which lie soft shales of equal thickness, continually undermined by the action of the spray driven violently by gusts of wind against the base of the precipice. In consequence of this disintegration, portions of the incumbent rock are left unsupported, and tumble down from time to time,



so that the cataract is made to recede southwards. The sudden descent of huge rocky fragments of the undermined limestone at the Horseshoe Fall, in 1828, and another at the American Fall, in 1818, are said to have shaken the adjacent country like an earthquake. According to the statement of our guide in 1841, Samuel Hooker, an indentation of about forty feet has been produced in the middle of the ledge of limestone at the lesser fall since the year 1815, so that it has begun to assume the shape of a crescent, while within the same period the Horseshoe Fall has been altered so as less to deserve its name. Goat Island has lost several acres in area in the last four years, and I have no doubt that this waste neither is, nor has been, a mere temporary accident, since I found that the same recession was in progress in various other waterfalls which I visited with Mr. Hall, in the state of New York. Some of these intersect the same rocks as the Niagara—for example, the Genesee at Rochester; others are cutting their way through newer formations, as Allan's Creek below Le Roy, or the Genesee at its upper falls at Portage. Mr. Bakewell calculated that, in the forty years preceding 1830, the Niagara had been going back at the rate of about a yard annually, but I conceive that one foot per year would be a much more probable conjecture, in which case 35,000 years would have been required for the retreat of the Falls from the escarpment of Queenston to their present site, if we could assume that the retrograde movement had been uniform throughout. This, however, could not have been the case, as at every step in the process of excavation the height of the precipice, the hardness of the materials at its base, and the quantity of fallen matter to be re-



moved, must have varied. At some points it may have receded much faster than at present, at others much slower, and it would be scarcely possible to decide whether its average progress has been more or less rapid than now.

Unfortunately our historical evidence of the former condition of the cataract is meagre and scanty in the extreme. Sixty years ago, the whole district between Lakes Erie and Ontario was a wilderness in which the Indian hunter chased the bear and the buffalo. When at Boston, my attention was called by Mr. Ingraham to a work translated from the original French of Father Hennepin, a missionary who gave a description of the grand cataract and a plate of it, as it appeared in the year 1678. It is not wonderful that coming suddenly upon the Falls which no European traveller had ever seen before, he should have believed them to be twice their real height. "Eetwixt the lakes Ontario and Erie," he says, "there is a vast and prodigious cadence of water, which falls after an astonishing manner, inso-much that the universe does not afford its parallel. As to the waters of Italy and Swedeland, they are but sorry patterns of it, and this wonderful downfall is compounded of two great falls, with an isle in the middle, and there is another cascade less than the other two which falls from west to east. I wished a hundred times that somebody had been with us, who could have described the wonders of this frightful fall. In the mean time, accept the following draught such as it is."—From his plate it appears that this third cascade was produced by what he terms "the elbow" caused by the projection of the table rock, which must then have been more prominent than now.



Seventy-three years afterwards, or in 1751, a letter was published in the *Gentleman's Magazine* for that year by Kalm, the Swedish botanist, on the Falls of Niagara. His description is also illustrated by a plate, in which the proportional height and breadth of the Falls are given more correctly. The lesser Fall on the left bank of the river is omitted; but at the place where it had been represented in Father Hennepin's sketch, Kalm inserts the letter "a," referring to a note in which he says, "Here the water was formerly forced out of its direct course by a projecting rock, which when standing turned the water off obliquely across the other Fall."

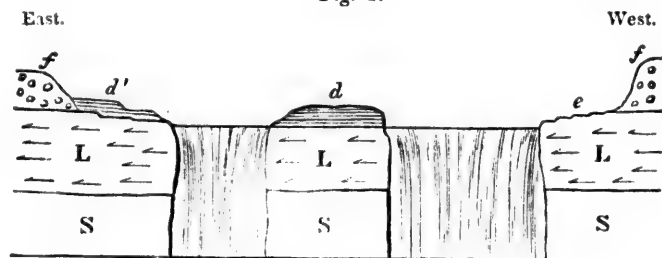
This observation confirms the reality of Hennepin's oblique cascade, and shows that some waste had been going on in the intermediate seventy-three years, making a visible alteration in the scene, and leading us to infer that the rocks have been suffering continual dilapidation for more than the last century and a half.

In the absence of more ample historical data, we are fortunately not without geological evidence of the former existence of a channel of the Niagara at a much higher level, before the table-land was intersected by the great ravine. Long before my visit to the Niagara, I had been informed of the existence on Goat Island of beds of gravel and sand containing fluvial shells, and some account had been given of these by Mr. Hall in his first report in 1839; I therefore proposed to him that we should examine these carefully, and see if we could trace any remnants of the same along the edges of the river-cliffs below the Falls. We began by collecting in Goat Island shells of the genera *Unio*, *Cyclas*, *Melania*, *Valvata*, *Limnea*, *Planorbis*, and



*Helix*, all of recent species, in the superficial deposit. They form regular beds, and numerous individuals of the *Unio* and *Cyclas* have both their valves united. We then found the same formation exactly opposite to

Fig. 1.



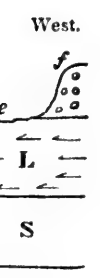
Section at Niagara Falls.

- L. Limestone 80 feet thick. S. Shale 80 feet thick.  
 d. Freshwater strata on Goat Island, above 20 feet thick.  
 d'. Same formation on the American side, containing bones of Mastodon.  
 e. Ledge of pure limestone on the Canada side.  
 f. Ancient drift.

the Falls on the top of the cliff (at *d'*, fig. 1.) on the American side, where two river-terraces, one twelve and the other twenty-four feet above the Niagara, have been cut in the modern deposits. In these we observed the same fossil shells as in Goat Island, and learnt that the teeth and other remains of a mastodon, some of which were shown us, had been found thirteen feet below the surface of the soil. We were then taken by our guide to a spot farther north, where similar gravel and sand with fluviatile shells occurred near the edge of the cliff overhanging the ravine, resting on the solid limestone. It was about half a mile below the principal Fall, and extended at some points 300 yards inland, but no farther, for it was then bounded by the bank of more ancient drift (*f*, fig. 1.). This deposit precisely occupies the place which the ancient bed and alluvial plain of the Niagara would naturally have filled,



deposit.  
duals of  
united.  
posite to

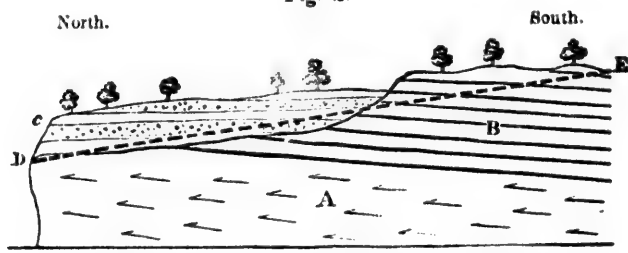


astodon.

on the  
twelve  
ra, have  
observed  
rnt that  
some of  
feet be-  
ken by  
gravel  
he edge  
he solid  
he prin-  
ards in-  
by the  
osit pre-  
and al-  
e filled,

if the river once extended farther northwards, at a level sufficiently high to cover the greater part of Goat Island. At that period the ravine could not have existed, and there must have been a barrier, several miles lower down, at or near the whirlpool.

Fig. 2.



Section of Goat Island from North to South, 2500 feet in length.

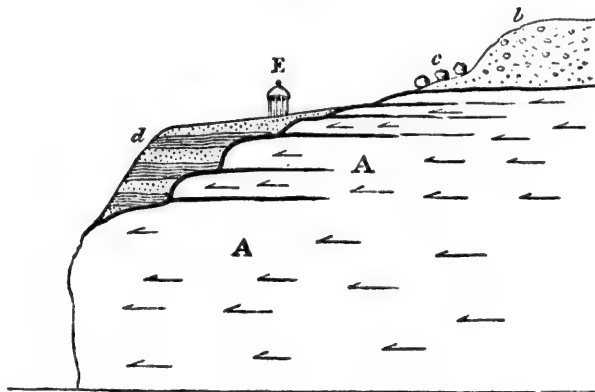
- A. Massive compact portion of the Niagara limestone.
- B. Upper thin-bedded portion of the Niagara limestone, strata slightly inclined to the South.
- c. Horizontal freshwater beds of gravel, sand, and loam, with shells.
- D, E. Present surface of the river Niagara at the Rapids.

The supposed original channel, through which the waters flowed from Lake Erie to Queenston or Lewiston, was excavated chiefly, but not entirely, in the superficial drift, and the old river-banks cut in this drift are still to be seen facing each other, on both sides of the ravine, for many miles below the Falls. A section of Goat Island from south to north, or parallel to the course of the Niagara (see fig. 2.), shows that the limestone (B) had been greatly denuded before the fluvial beds (c) were accumulated, and consequently when the Falls were still several miles below their present site. From this fact I infer that the slope of the river at the rapids was principally due to the original shape of the old channel, and not, as some have conjectured, to modern erosions on the approach of the Falls to the spot.



The observations made in 1841 induced me in the following year (June, 1842) to re-examine diligently both sides of the river from the Falls to Lewiston and Queenston, to ascertain if any other patches of the ancient river-bed had escaped destruction. Accordingly, following first the edge of the cliffs on the eastern bank, I discovered, with no small delight, at the summer-house (E, fig. 3.), above the whirlpool, a bed of

Fig. 3.



Section at the Summer-house above Whirlpool, east bank of Niagara.

- A. Thick-bedded limestone, same as at Falls.
- b. Ancient drift.
- c. Boulders at base of steep bank formed by drift.
- d. Freshwater strata forty feet thick.
- E Summer-house.

stratified sand and gravel, forty feet thick, containing fluvial shells in abundance. Fortunately, a few yards from the summer-house a pit had been recently dug for the cellar of a new house to the depth of nine feet in the shelly sand, in which I found shells of the genera *Unio*, *Cyclas*, *Melania*, *Helix*, and *Pupa*, not only identical in species with those which occur in a fresh state in the bed of the Niagara, near the ferry,



but corresponding also in the proportionate number of individuals belonging to each species, the valves of *Cyclas similis*, for example, being the most numerous. The same year I found also a remnant of the old river-bed on the opposite or Canadian side of the river, about a mile and a half above the whirlpool, or two miles and a half below the Falls. These facts appear conclusive as to the former extension of a more elevated valley, four miles, at least, below the Falls; and at this point the old river-bed must have been so high as to be capable of holding back the waters which covered all the patches of fluvial sand and gravel, including that of Goat Island. As the table-land or limestone-platform rises gently to the north, and is highest near Queenston, there is no reason to suppose that there was a greater fall in the Niagara when it flowed at its higher level, than now between Lake Erie and the Falls; and according to this view, the old channel might well have furnished the required barrier.

I have stated that on the left, or Canadian bank of the Niagara, below the Falls, I succeeded in detecting sand with freshwater shells at one point only, near the mouth of the muddy river. The ledge of limestone on this side is usually laid bare, or only covered by vegetable mould (as at *e*, fig. 1.), until we arrive at the boulder clay (*f*, fig. 1.), which is sometimes within a few yards of the top of the precipice, and sometimes again retires eighty yards or more from it, being from twenty to fifty feet in height. I also found an old river-bed running through the drift parallel to the Niagara, its course still marked by swamps and ponds, such as we find in all alluvial plains, and only remarkable here because the river now runs at a lower level by 300



feet. This deserted channel occurs between the Muddy River and the Whirlpool, and is 100 yards broad.

There is also a notch or indentation, called the "Devil's Hole," on the right or eastern side of the Niagara, half a mile below the Whirlpool, which deserves notice, for there, I think, there are signs of the Great Cataract having been once situated. A small streamlet, called the "Bloody Run," from a battle fought there with the Indians, joins the Niagara at this place, and has hollowed out a lateral chasm. Ascending the great ravine, we here see, facing us, a projecting cliff of limestone, which stands out forty feet beyond the general range of the river cliff below, and has its flat summit bare and without soil, just as if it had once formed the eastern side of the Great Fall.

By exploring the banks of the Niagara above the Falls, I satisfied myself that if the river should continue to cut back the ravine still farther southwards, it would leave here and there, near the verge of the precipice and on its islands, strata of sand and loam, with freshwater shells similar to those already described. I collected fossil shells, for example, on the left bank, near the Chippewa River, and learnt that others had been reached, in sinking a well, in 1818, at the south-east end of Grand Island. The situation of such deposits is represented at *a, a* (fig. 4., p. 37.).

The patches of fluviatile strata, therefore, occurring between the old banks of drift (*f, f*, fig. 1., p. 30.) and the precipice, and not having been met with on other parts of the platform at a distance from the Niagara, confirm the theory, previously adopted on independent evidence, of the recession of the Falls from Queenston southwards. The narrowness of the gorge near Queens-



ton, where it is just large enough to contain the rapid current of water, accords well with the same hypothesis, and there is no ground for suspecting that the excavation was assisted by an original rent in the rocks, because there is no fissure at present in the limestone at the Falls, where the moving waters alone have power to cut their way backwards.

I have already remarked that there will always be insuperable difficulties in the way of estimating with precision the rate of the retrogression of the Falls in former ages, because at every step new strata have been successively exposed at the base of the precipice. According to their softer or harder nature, the undermining process must have been accelerated or retarded. This will be understood by reference to the annexed section (fig. 4.), where the line *b, c, d*, represents the present surface of the river along which the Falls have receded. The strata (1, 3, and 7,) are of soft materials; the others, (2, 4, and 8), which slightly project at their termination in the escarpment, are of a more compact and refractory kind. It has been necessary to exaggerate the southward dip of the strata in this diagram, which is in reality so slight as to be insensible to the eye, being only, as before mentioned, about twenty-five feet in a mile, the river channel sloping in an opposite direction at the rate of fifteen feet in a mile. These two inclinations, taken together, have caused, as Mr. Hall has pointed out in his Survey, a diminution of forty feet in the perpendicular height of the Falls for every mile that they receded southward. By reference to the section, the reader will perceive that when they were situated at the Whirlpool (*c*), the quartzose sandstone (2), which is extremely hard, was at the base of



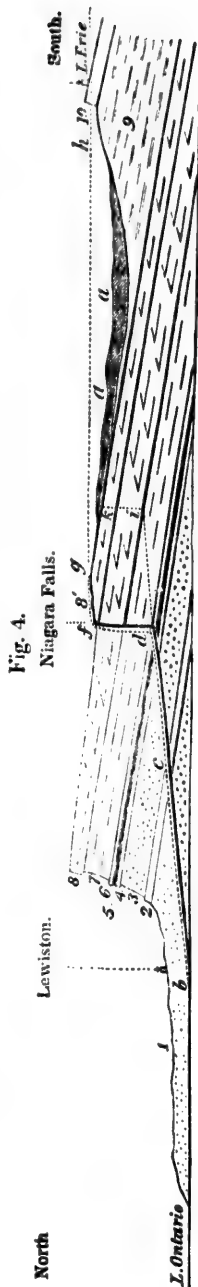


Fig. 4.

Niagara Falls.

Lewiston.

North

South.

L. Ontario

Section of the strata along the Niagara River, from Lake Ontario to Lake Erie.—(Chiefly from Hall's Report on the Geology of New York.)

1. Red shaly sandstone and marl, seen in the bank of the river at Lewiston, and extending to Lake Ontario.
2. Grey quartzose sandstone.
3. Red shaly sandstone like No. 1. (with thin courses of sandstone near the top).
4. Grey and mottled sandstone, constituting, with those below, the Medina sandstone.
5. A thin mass of green shale.
6. Compact grey limestone, which, with No. 5, constitutes the Clinton group at this place.
7. Soft argillaceous shale. Niagara shale.
8. Limestone—compact and geodiferous. Niagara limestone.
- 8'. The upper thin-bedded portion of the Niagara limestone.
9. Onondaga salt group, including the hydraulic limestone, or beds of passage to the next rock.
10. Onondaga and Corniferous limestones, being all the limestones of the Helderberg division which continue so far westward.

a, a. A fluvial deposit in the depression south of the Rapids, probably similar to the fluvial deposit of Goat Island.

b, c, d, f, g, h. The dotted line represents the present surface of the river from Lewiston to Lake Erie.

d, f. The perpendicular fall, over the Niagara limestone and shale.

f, g. The rapids, fifty-two feet, over the upper thin-bedded portion of the Niagara limestone.

c. The whirlpool.

i, k. The position of the falls and rapids after a recession of two miles

Note. The fainter lines indicate that portion of the rocks which has been already cut through by the Niagara.

The superficial drift or boulder formation is not represented in this section.

Length of section from north to south about twenty-eight miles.



the precipice, and here the Great Cataract may have remained nearly stationary for ages.

In regard to the future retrocession of the Falls, it will be perceived by the same section (fig. 4.), that when they have travelled back two miles, or to *i, k*, the massive limestone (8), now at the top of the Falls, will then be at their base; and its great hardness may, perhaps, effectually stop the excavating process, if it should not have been previously arrested by the descent of large masses of the same rock from the cliff above. It will also appear that the Falls will continually diminish in height, and should they ever reach Lake Erie, they will intersect entirely different strata from those over which they are now thrown.

The next inquiry into which we are naturally led by our retrospect into the past history of this region, relates to the origin of the Falls. If they were once seven miles northward of their present site, in what manner, and at what geological period, did they first come into existence? In tracing back the series of past events, we have already seen that the last change was the erosion of the great ravine; previously to which occurred the deposition of the freshwater deposit, including fossil shells of recent species, and the bones of the Mastodon. Thirdly, of still older date was the drift or boulder formation which overspreads the whole platform and the face of the escarpment near Queenston, as well as the low country between it and Lake Ontario. Fourthly, the denudation of the line of cliff or escarpment, in which the table-land ends abruptly, preceded the origin of the drift. I shall endeavour to show, in a subsequent chapter, when speaking of Canada, that this drift was of marine origin, and formed when the



whole country was submerged beneath the sea. In the region of the Niagara it is stratified, and though no fossils have as yet been detected in it, similar deposits occur in the valley of the St. Lawrence at Montreal, at a height nearly equal to Lake Erie, where fossil shells, of species such as now inhabit the northern seas, lie buried in the drift.

It is almost superfluous to affirm that a consideration of the geology of the whole basin of the St. Lawrence and the great lakes can alone entitle us to speculate on the state of things which immediately preceded or accompanied the origin of the Great Cataract. To give even a brief sketch of the various phenomena to which our attention must be directed, in order to solve this curious problem, would require a digression of several chapters. At present the shortest and most intelligible way of explaining the results of my observations and reflections on this subject will be to describe the successive changes in the order in which I imagine them to have happened. The first event then to which we must recur is the superficial waste or denudation of the older stratified rocks (from 1 to 10 inclusive, section, fig. 4., p. 37.), all of which had remained nearly undisturbed and horizontal from the era of their formation beneath the sea to a comparatively modern period. That they were all of marine origin is proved by their imbedded corals and shells. They at length emerged slowly, and portions of their edges were removed by the action of the waves and currents, by which cliffs were formed at successive heights, especially where hard limestones (such as Nos. 10 and 8, fig. 4.) at Blackrock and Lewiston, were incumbent on soft shales. After this denudation the whole region was again gradually



submerged, and this event took place during the glacial period, at which time the surfaces of the rocks already denuded were smoothed, polished, and furrowed by glacial action, which operated successively at different levels. The country was then buried under a load of stratified and unstratified sand, gravel, and erratic blocks, occasionally 80, and in some hollows more than 300, feet deep. An old ravine terminating at St. David's, which intersects the limestone platform of the Niagara, and opens into the great escarpment, illustrates the posteriority of this drift to the epoch when the older rocks were denuded. The period of submergence last alluded to was very modern, for the shells then inhabiting the ocean belonged, almost without exception, to species still living in high northern, and some of them in temperate, latitudes. The next great change was the re-emergence of this country, consisting of the ancient denuded rocks, covered indiscriminately with modern marine drift. The upward movement by which this was accomplished was not sudden and instantaneous, but gradual and intermittent. The pauses by which it was interrupted are marked by ancient beach-lines, ridges, and terraces, found at different heights above the present lakes. These ridges and terraces are partly due to the denudation and re-arrangement of the materials of the drift itself, which had previously been deposited on the platform, the sloping face of the escarpments, and in the basins of the great lakes.

As soon as the table-land between Lakes Erie and Ontario emerged and was laid dry, the river Niagara came into existence, the basin of Lake Ontario still continuing to form part of the sea. From that moment



there was a cascade at Queenston of moderate height, which fell directly into the sea. The uppermost limestone and subjacent slate (8 and 7, fig. 4. p. 37.) being exposed, the cataract commenced its retrograde course, while the lower beds in the escarpment (from 6 to 1) were still protected from waste by remaining submerged. A second fall would in due time be caused by the continued rise of the land and the exposure of the hard beds (6 and 4), constituting what is called the Clinton group, together with the soft and easily undermined red shale (3), on which they repose. Finally, a third cascade would in all likelihood be produced by the rise of another hard mass, the quartzose sandstone (2, fig. 4.) resting on very destructible red shale (1). Three falls, one above the other, very similar in their geological and geographical position to those actually seen on the river Genesee at Rochester, would thus be formed. The recession of the uppermost must have been gradually retarded by the thickening of the incumbent limestone (No. 8, fig. 4), in proportion as the Falls sawed their way southwards. By this means the second cataract, which would not suffer the same retardation, might overtake it, and the two united would then be retarded by the large quantity of rock to be removed, until the lowest fall would come up to them, and then the whole would be united into one.

The principal events enumerated in the above retrospect, comprising the submergence and re-emergence of the Canadian lake district and valley of the St. Lawrence, the deposition of freshwater strata, and the gradual erosion of a ravine seven miles long, are all so modern in the earth's history as to belong to a period when the marine the fluvatile, and terrestrial



shells, were the same, or nearly the same, as those now living. Yet if we fix our thoughts on any one portion of this period—on the lapse of time, for example, required for the recession of the Niagara from the escarpment to the Falls,—how immeasurably great will its duration appear in comparison with the sum of years to which the annals of the human race are limited! Had we happened to discover strata, charged with fluvatile shells of recent species, and enclosing the bones and teeth of a Mastodon, near a river at the bottom of some valley, we might naturally have inferred that the buried quadruped had perished at an era long after the canoes of the Indian hunter had navigated the North American waters. Such an inference might easily have been drawn respecting the fossil tusk of the great elephantine quadruped, which I saw taken out of the shell-marl on the banks of the Genesee River near Rochester (see p. 19.). But fortunately on the Niagara, we may turn to the deep ravine, and behold therein a chronometer measuring rudely, yet emphatically, the vast magnitude of the interval of years, which separate the present time from the epoch when the Niagara flowed at a higher level several miles further north across the platform. We then become conscious how far the two events before confounded together,—the entombment of the Mastodon, and the date of the first peopling of the earth by man,—may recede to distances almost indefinitely remote from each other.

But, however much we may enlarge our ideas of the time which has elapsed since the Niagara first began to drain the waters of the upper lakes, we have seen that this period was one only of a series, all belonging to the present zoological epoch; or that in which



the living testaceous fauna, whether freshwater or marine, had already come into being. If such events can take place while the zoology of the earth remains almost stationary and unaltered, what ages may not be comprehended in those successive tertiary periods during which the Flora and Fauna of the globe have been almost entirely changed! Yet how subordinate a place in the long calendar of geological chronology do the successive tertiary periods themselves occupy! How much more enormous a duration must we assign to many antecedent revolutions of the earth and its inhabitants! No analogy can be found in the natural world to the immense scale of these divisions of past time, unless we contemplate the celestial spaces which have been measured by the astronomer. Some of the nearest of these within the limits of the solar system, as, for example, the orbits of the planets, are reckoned by hundreds of millions of miles, which the imagination in vain endeavours to grasp. Yet one of these spaces, such as the diameter of the earth's orbit, is regarded as a mere unit, a mere infinitesimal fraction of the distance which separates our sun from the nearest star. By pursuing still farther the same investigations, we learn that there are luminous clouds scarcely distinguishable by the naked eye, but resolvable by the telescope into clusters of stars, which are so much more remote, that the interval between our sun and Sirius may be but a fraction of this larger distance. To regions of space of this higher order in point of magnitude, we may probably compare such an interval of time as that which divides the human epoch from the origin of the coralline limestone over which the Niagara is precipitated at the Falls. Many have been the suc-



cessive revolutions in organic life, and many the vicissitudes in the physical geography of the globe, and often has sea been converted into land, and land into sea, since that rock was formed. The Alps, the Pyrenees, the Himalaya, have not only begun to exist as lofty mountain chains, but the solid materials of which they are composed have been slowly elaborated beneath the sea within the stupendous interval of ages here alluded to.

The geologist may muse and speculate on these events until, filled with awe and admiration, he forgets the presence of the mighty cataract itself, and no longer sees the rapid motion of its waters, nor hears their sound, as they fall into the deep abyss. But whenever his thoughts are recalled to the present, the tone of his mind,—the sensations awakened in his soul, will be found to be in perfect harmony with the grandeur and beauty of the glorious scene which surrounds him.



## CHAPTER III.

*Tour from the Niagara to the Northern Frontier of Pennsylvania.—Ancient Gypsiferous Formation of New York.—Fossil Mastodon at Geneseo.—Scenery.—Sudden Growth of New Towns.—Coal of Blossberg, and resemblance to British Coal Measures.—Stigmatica.—Humming Birds.—Nomenclature of Places.—Helderberg Mountains and Fossils.—Refractory Tenants.—Travelling in the States.—Politeness to Women.—Canal-boat.—Domestic Service.—Progress of Civilization.—Philadelphia.—Fire-engines.*

Sept. 2. 1841.—FROM Niagara Falls we travelled to the large town of Buffalo, on the shores of Lake Erie, and then passed through Williamsville, Le Roy, and Geneseo, in the State of New York. The horizontal Silurian rocks of this region are in general extremely like those of corresponding age in Europe, consisting of mud-stones and limestone, with similar corals and shells. But there is one remarkable exception;—the occurrence in the middle of the series of a formation of red, green, and bluish grey marls with beds of gypsum, and occasional salt-springs, the whole being from 800 to 1,000 feet thick, and undistinguishable in mineral character from parts of the Upper New Red or Trias of Europe. Near Le Roy I saw these marls and the gypsum exposed to view in quarries. In the overlying limestone at Williamsville were large masses of corals, of the genera *Favosites*, *Cystiphyllum*, and others, in the position in which they grew. Some of the species agree with British fossils, but the greater part of them, as I may state on the authority of Mr. Lonsdale, who has studied my specimens, are distinct.



When at the village of Geneseo, I learnt that ten years before, the bones of a Mastodon had been obtained from a bog in the neighbourhood, and I was desirous of knowing whether any shells accompanied the bones, and whether they were of recent species. Mr. Hall and I therefore procured workmen, who were soon joined by several amateurs of Geneseo, and a pit was dug to the depth of about five feet from the surface. Here we came down upon a bed of white shell-marl and sand, in which lay portions of the skull, ivory tusk, and vertebræ, of the extinct quadruped. The shells proved to be all of existing freshwater and land species now common in this district. I had been told that the Mastodon's teeth were taken out of *muck*, or the black superficial peaty earth of this bog. I was therefore glad to ascertain that it was really buried in the shell-marl below the peat, and therefore agreed in situation with the large fossil elks of Ireland, which, though often said to occur in peat, are in fact met with in subjacent beds of marl.

At the Falls of Le Roy, and at the Upper Falls of the River Genesee at Portage, I had opportunities of observing how both of these cascades have been cutting their way backwards through the Silurian rocks, even within the memory of the present settlers. They have each hollowed out a deep ravine with perpendicular sides, bearing the same proportion in volume to the body of water flowing through them which the great ravine of the Niagara does to that river.

Mr. Hall took leave of us at Geneseo, after which I set out on a tour to examine the series of rocks between the upper Silurian strata of the State of New York and the Coal of Pennsylvania. With this view I took



the direction of Blossberg, where the most northern coal mines of the United States are worked.

On this occasion we left the main road, and entered, for the first time, an American stage-coach, having been warned not to raise our expectations too high in regard to the ease or speed of our conveyance. Accordingly, we found that after much fatigue, we had only accomplished a journey of 46 miles in 12 hours, between Genesee and Dansville. We had four horses ; and when I complained at one of the inns that our coachman seemed to take pleasure in driving rapidly over deep ruts and the roughest ground, it was explained to me that this was the first time in his life he had ever attempted to drive any vehicle, whether two or four-wheeled. The coolness and confidence with which every one here is ready to try his hand at any craft is truly amusing. A few days afterwards I engaged a young man to drive me in a gig from Tioga to Blossberg. On the way, he pointed out, first, his father's property, and then a farm of his own, which he had lately purchased. As he was not yet twenty years of age, I expressed surprise that he had got on so well in the world, when he told me that he had been editor of the "Tioga Democrat" for several years, but had now sold his share of the newspaper.

In the region between Lake Erie and the borders of Pennsylvania, as well as in that immediately south of Lake Ontario, there is an entire want of fine scenery, as might have been anticipated where all the strata are horizontal. The monotony of the endless forest is sometimes relieved by a steep escarpment, a river with wooded islands, or a lake ; but the only striking features in the landscape are the waterfalls, and the deep



chasms hollowed out by them in the course of ages. As the opposite banks of these ravines are on the same level, including that of the Niagara itself, we come abruptly to their edges before we have any suspicion of their existence, and we must travel out of our way to enjoy a sight of them.

At length we reached the water-shed, where the streams flow, on one side, northwards to Lake Ontario, and on the other, southwards, to the Susquehanna. I began to wonder how the Indians ever obtained any correct notions of topography in so continuous a forest, all the smaller rivers, with their islands, being embowered and choked up with trees. I soon ceased to repine at the havoc that was going on in the fine timber which bounded our road on every side.

After traversing successive zones of the Upper Silurian strata, I at length entered at Bath upon the olive-coloured slates and grey sandstone, which seem to be the equivalent of the lower part of the Old Red, or Devonian of England. In this rock some streaks of carbonaceous matter, which soon thin out, and are rarely three inches thick, are met with. I found a proprietor on Spalding's Creek preparing to sink a costly shaft for coal, and I earnestly dissuaded him from his project, referring him to the New York survey. Every scientific man who discourages a favourite mining scheme must make up his mind to be as ill received as the physician who gives an honest opinion that his patient's disorder is incurable.

After the Olive Slate, I came to an incumbent formation of red sandstone near Tioga, and collected fish of two species of *Holoptichius*, one apparently identical with *H. nobilissimus*, a fossil of the British Old



Red, and another which, I learn from Sir Philip Egerton, belongs to an entirely new type of this genus. With these were a species of *Chelonicthys* of large dimensions, a form also very characteristic of the same formation both in Russia and Scotland.

Sept. 5.—At Bath I hired a private carriage for Corning. Although there are two railways here with locomotive engines, one leading to the south, the other for conveying the coal of Blossberg to the Erie canal, I looked in vain for the name of Corning in a newly-published map, and was informed that the town was only two years old. Already the school-house was finished, the spire of the Methodist church nearly complete, the Presbyterian one in the course of building, the site of the Episcopalian decided on. Wishing to have a carriage, I was taken to a large livery stable, where there were several vehicles and good horses. The stumps of trees, some six feet high, are still standing in the gardens and between the houses. Our inn-keeper remarked that the cost of uprooting them would be nearly equal to that of erecting a log-house on the same place. I amused myself by counting the rings of annual growth in these trees, and found that some had been only forty years old when cut down, yet when these began to grow, no white man had approached within many leagues of this valley; most of the older stumps went back no farther than two centuries, or to the landing of the pilgrim fathers, some few to the time of Sir Walter Raleigh, and scarcely one to the days of Columbus. I had before remarked that very ancient trees seemed uncommon in the aboriginal forests of this part of America. They are usually tall and straight, with no grass growing under their dark shade, although



the green herbage soon springs up when the wood is removed and the sun's rays allowed to penetrate. Some of the stumps, especially those of the fir tribe, take fifty years to rot away, though exposed in the air to alternations of rain and sunshine, a fact on which every geologist will do well to reflect, for it is clear that the trees of a forest submerged beneath the waters, or still more, if entirely excluded from air, by becoming imbedded in sediment, may endure for centuries without decay, so that there may have been ample time for the slow petrification of erect fossil trees in the Carboniferous and other formations, or for the slow accumulation around them of a great succession of strata.

I asked the landlord of the inn at Corning, who was very attentive to his guests, to find my coachman. He immediately called out in his bar-room, "Where is the gentleman that brought this man here?" A few days before, a farmer in New York had styled my wife "the woman," though he called his own daughters *ladies*, and would, I believe, have freely extended that title to their maid-servant. I was told of a witness in a late trial at Boston, who stated in evidence that "while he and another gentleman were shovelling up mud," &c.; from which it appears that the spirit of social equality has left no other signification to the terms "gentleman" and "lady" but that of "male and female individual."

*Sept. 7. Blossberg.*—I had now entered Pennsylvania, and reached one of the extreme north-eastern outliers of the great Appalachian coal-field, as Professor Rogers has termed the Coal-measures of Pennsylvania, Ohio, and Virginia. It was the first time I had seen the true "Coal" in America, and I was much struck



with its surprising analogy in mineral and fossil characters to that of Europe—the same white grits or sandstones as are used for building near Edinburgh and Newcastle—similar black shales, often bituminous, with the leaves of ferns spread out as in an herbarium, the species being for the most part identical with British fossil plants—seams of good bituminous coal, some a few inches, others several yards in thickness—beds and nodules of clay iron-stone; and the whole series resting on a coarse grit and conglomerate, containing quartz pebbles, very like our Millstone Grit, and often called by the American as well as the English miners the “Farewell Rock,” because when they have reached it in their borings, they take leave of all valuable fuel. Beneath this grit are those red and grey sandstones already alluded to as corresponding in mineral character, fossils, and position, with our “Old Red.”

I was desirous of ascertaining whether a generalisation recently made by Mr. Logan in South Wales could hold good in this country. Each of the Welsh seams of coal, more than ninety in number, have been found to rest on a sandy clay or firestone, in which a peculiar species of plant called *Stigmaria* abounds, to the exclusion of all others. I saw the *Stigmaria* at Blossberg, lying in abundance in the heaps of rubbish where coal had been extracted from a horizontal seam. Dr. Saynisch, president of the mine, kindly lighted up the gallery that I might inspect the works, and we saw the black shales in the roof, adorned with beautiful fern leaves, while the floor consisted of an under-clay, in which the stems of *Stigmaria*, with their leaves or *rootlets* attached, were running in all directions. The agreement of these phenomena with those of the Welsh



Coal-measures, 3000 miles distant, surprised me, and lead to conclusions respecting the origin of coal from plants not drifted, but growing on the spot, to which I shall refer in the sequel.

Dr. Saynisch, who was the first to explore the coal in this region, told me that, soon after he settled here, he shot a wolf out of his bedroom window. These animals still commit havoc on the flocks, and last autumn a large panther was killed in the outskirts of Blossberg, but the bears have not been seen for several years. We rode in a hot sunny day to a large clearing in the forest far from any habitation, and I was struck with the perfect silence of the surrounding woods. We heard no call or note of any bird, nothing to remind us of the chirping of the chaffinch or autumnal song of our robin, the grasshoppers and crickets alone keeping up a ceaseless din day and night. The birds here are very abundant, and some are adorned with brilliant plumage, as the large woodpecker, with its crimson head,—the yellow-bird (*Fringilla tristis*), of the size of a yellow-hammer, with black wings and a bright yellow body,—the red-bird (*Tanagra rubra*),—and the *Loxia ludorisisiana*.

A hen humming-bird, far less brilliant in its plumage than the male, flew within a few inches of my face. Its flight and diminutive size reminded me of our humming sphinx, or hawk-moth, like which it remains poised in the air while sucking the flowers, the body seeming motionless, and the wings being invisible from the swiftness of their vibrations. I had before seen one in the wood at Cedarville, sucking the flower of a wild balsam (*Impatiens biflora*). Dr. Saynisch tells me that on his first visit to these woods, he has known two



of these birds at a time perch on the edge of a cup of water which he held in his hand, and drink without fear. I was aware from Mr. Darwin's Voyage in the *Beagle*, that in islands like the Galapagos,

"Where human foot hath ne'er or rarely been,"

the wild birds have no apprehension of danger from man ; but here, where for ages the Indian hunters preceded the whites, I am surprised to learn that an instinctive dread of the great "usurper" had not become hereditary in the feathered tribe. I was told, however, that in the hunting grounds called Indian Reservations, within the limits of the settled and civilised states, of which we passed one in New York, the wild animals are comparatively tame, it being a system of the Indians never to molest the game or their prey, except when required for food.

We returned from Blossberg by the town of Jefferson, and, sailing down Seneca Lake in a steamboat to Geneva, joined the railway, which carried us back again to Albany. At one of the stations where the train stopped we overheard some young women from Ohio exclaim, "Well, we are in a pretty fix!" and found their dilemma to be characteristic of the financial crisis of these times, for none of their dollar notes of the Ohio banks would pass here. The substantive "fix" is an acknowledged vulgarism, but the verb is used in New England by well-educated people, in the sense of the French "arranger" or the English "do." To fix the hair, the table, the fire, means to dress the hair, lay the table, and make up the fire ; and this application is, I presume, of Hibernian origin, as an Irish gentleman, King Corney, in Miss Edgeworth's tale of *Ormond*, says, "I'll fix him and his wounds."



There are scarcely any American idioms or words which are not of British origin, some obsolete, others provincial. When the lexicographer, Noah Webster, whom I saw at New Haven, was asked how many new words he had coined, he replied one only "to demoralize," and that not for his dictionary, but long before, in a pamphlet published in the last century.

The nomenclature of the places passed through in our short excursion of one month was strange enough. We had been at Syracuse, Utica, Rome, and Parma, had gone from Buffalo to Batavia, and on the same day breakfasted at St. Helena, and dined at Elba. We collected fossils at Moscow, and travelled by Painted Post and Big Flats to Havanna. After returning by Auburn to Albany, I was taken to Troy, a city of 20,000 inhabitants, that I might see a curious landslip which had just happened on Mount Olympus, the western side of that hill, together with a contiguous portion of Mount Ida, having slid down into the Hudson, and caused the death of several persons. Fortunately, some few of the Indian names, such as Mohawk, Ontario, Oneida, Canandaigua, and Niagara, are retained. Although legislative interference in behalf of good taste would not be justifiable, Congress might interpose for the sake of the post-office, and prevent the future multiplication of the same names for villages, cities, counties, and townships. That more than a hundred places should be called Washington is an intolerable nuisance. An Englishman, it is true, cannot complain, for we follow the same system in our colonies; and it is high time that the postmaster-general brought in a bill for prohibiting new streets in London from receiving names already appropriated and repeated *fifty*



times in that same city, to the infinite confusion of the inhabitants and their letter-carriers.

At Troy I visited Professor Eaton, who published in 1824, in his "Survey of the Erie Canal," the earliest account of the Niagara district, dividing the rocks into groups, nearly all of which have been since adopted by the New York surveyors. The mind of this pioneer in American geology was still in full activity, and his zeal unabated; but a few months after my visit he died at an advanced age.

I next examined, in company with Mr. Hall, two swamps, situated in Albany and Greene counties, west of the Hudson river, where the remains of a Mastodon occurred, in both places at the depth of four or five feet, in shell-marl, with recent species of shells. These deposits of marl covered with peat are newer than the boulder formation, and cattle have very lately been mired in the same bogs. In similar situations in Scotland and England we find only the remains of existing mammalia; and although on the banks of the Thames and elsewhere we discover the bones of the extinct elephant and rhinoceros associated with recent land and freshwater shells (mingled, however, with some few exotic species), the strata in which they lie do not belong precisely, like those in New York, to the most modern geographical condition of the country.

We then made a tour to the Helderberg Mountains, S. W. of Albany, to see the Upper Silurian strata, and to study their fossils in the museum of Mr. Gebhard at Schoharie. The depth of the valleys, and some precipitous cliffs of limestone, render this region more picturesque than is usual where the strata are undisturbed. I rejoiced to see the sugar-maple (*Acer saccharinus*),



an ornamental tree, spared in the new clearings. The sap from which sugar is made was everywhere trickling down into wooden troughs from gashes made in the bark. The red maples were now beginning to assume their bright autumnal tints, but the rest of the forest was as verdant as ever; a blue Lobelia, which we had gathered at the Falls of Niagara, was still in bloom, together with many white and blue asters which had only just come out. The most elegant flower in the woods at this season is the fringed gentian (*Gentiana crinita*).

—"Bright with Autumn dew,  
And colour'd with the Heaven's own blue."

One day at Schoharie, a hawk pounced down from a lofty tree, and seized a striped squirrel on the ground, within three yards of our party. It was bearing off its burden with ease, until, alarmed by our shouts, it dropped the squirrel, which ran off apparently unhurt. I observed early in the morning myriads of cobwebs extending from one blade of grass to another, as we often see them on an English lawn before the dew is dried up.

On our way back from Schoharie to Albany, we found the country people in a ferment, a sheriff's officer having been seriously wounded when in the act of distraining for rent, this being the third year of the "Helderberg war," or a successful resistance by an armed tenantry to the legal demands of their landlord, Mr. Van Renssalaer. It appears that a large amount of territory on both sides of the river Hudson, now supporting, according to some estimates, a population of 100,000 souls, had long been held in fee by the Van Renssalaer family, the tenants paying a small ground



rent. This system of things is regarded by many as not only injurious, because it imposes grievous restraints upon alienation, but as unconstitutional, or contrary to the genius of their political institutions, and tending to create a sort of feudal perpetuity. Some of the leases have already been turned into fees, but many of the tenants were unable or unwilling to pay the prices asked for such conveyances, and declared that they had paid rent long enough, and that it was high time that they should be owners of the land.

A few years ago, when the estates descended from the late General Van Rensselaer to his sons, the attempt to enforce the landlord's rights met with open opposition. The courts of law gave judgment, and the sheriff of Albany having failed to execute his process, at length took military force in 1839, but with no better success. The governor of New York was then compelled to back him with the military array of the state, about 700 men, who began the campaign at a day's notice in a severe snow storm. The tenants are said to have mustered against them 1500 strong, and the rents were still unpaid, when in the following year, 1840, the governor, courting popularity, as it should seem, while condemning the recusants in his message, virtually encouraged them by recommending their case to the favourable consideration of the state, hinting at the same time at legislative remedies. The legislature, however, to their credit, refused to enact these, leaving the case to the ordinary courts of law.

The whole affair is curious, as demonstrating the impossibility of creating at present in this country a class of landed proprietors deriving their income from the letting of lands upon lease. Every man must oc-



copy his own acres. He who has capital enough to stock a farm can obtain land of his own so cheap as naturally to prefer being his own landlord.

*Sept. 27. 1841.*—We embarked once more on the Hudson, to sail from Albany to New York, with several hundred passengers on board, and thought the scenery more beautiful than ever. The steam-boat is a great floating hotel, of which the captain is landlord. He presides at meals, taking care that no gentlemen take their places at table till all the ladies, or, as we should say in England, the women of every class, are first seated. The men, by whom they are accompanied, are then invited to join them, after which, at the sound of a bell, the bachelors and married men travelling *en garçon* pour into the saloon, in much the same style as members of the House of Commons rush into the Upper House to hear a speech from the throne.

One of the first peculiarities that must strike a foreigner in the United States is the deference paid universally to the sex, without regard to station. Women may travel alone here in stage-coaches, steam-boats, and railways, with less risk of encountering disagreeable behaviour, and of hearing coarse and unpleasant conversation, than in any country I have ever visited. The contrast in this respect between the Americans and the French is quite remarkable. There is a spirit of true gallantry in all this, but the publicity of the railway car, where all are in one long room, and of the large ordinaries, whether on land or water, is a great protection, the want of which has been felt by many a female traveller without escort in England. As the Americans address no conversation to strangers, we soon became tolerably reconciled to living so much in



public. Our fellow-passengers consisted for the most part of shopkeepers, artizans, and mechanics, with their families, all well-dressed, and so far as we had intercourse with them, polite and desirous to please. A large part of them were on pleasure excursions, in which they delight to spend their spare cash.

On one or two occasions during our late tour in the newly-settled districts of New York, it was intimated to us that we were expected to sit down to dinner with our driver, usually the son or brother of the farmer who owned our vehicle. We were invariably struck with the propriety of their manners, in which there was self-respect without forwardness. The only disagreeable adventure in the way of coming into close contact with low and coarse companions, arose from my taking places in a cheap canal-boat near Lockport, partly filled with emigrants, and corresponding somewhat in the rank of its passengers with a third-class railway-carriage in England. "*Que diable allait-il faire dans cette galère?*" would have been a difficult question for me to answer, especially as I afterwards learnt that I might have hired a good private carriage at the very place where I embarked. This convenience indeed, although there is no posting, I invariably found at my command in all the states of the Union, both northern and southern, which I visited during my stay in America.

Travellers must make up their minds, in this as in other countries, to fall in now and then with free and easy people. I am bound, however, to say that in the two most glaring instances of vulgar familiarity which we have experienced here, we found out that both the offenders had crossed the Atlantic only ten years before, and had risen rapidly from a humble station. What-



ever good breeding exists here in the middle classes is certainly not of foreign importation ; and John Bull, in particular, when out of humour with the manners of the Americans, is often unconsciously beholding his own image in the mirror, or comparing one class of society in the United States with another in his own country, which ought, from superior affluence and leisure, to exhibit a higher standard of refinement and intelligence.

We have now seen the two largest cities, many towns and villages, besides some of the back settlements, of New York and the New England States ; an exemplification, I am told, of a population amounting to about five millions of souls. We have met with no beggars, witnessed no signs of want, but everywhere the most unequivocal proofs of prosperity and rapid progress in agriculture, commerce, and great public works. As these states are, some of them, entirely free from debt, and the rest have punctually paid the interest of Government loans, it would be most unjust to apply to them the disparaging comment "that it is easy to go ahead with borrowed money." In spite of the constant influx of uneducated and pennyless adventurers from Europe, I believe it would be impossible to find five millions in any other region of the globe whose average moral, social, and intellectual condition stands so high. One convincing evidence of their well-being has not, I think, been sufficiently dwelt upon by foreigners : I allude to the difficulty of obtaining and retaining young American men and women for a series of years in domestic service, an occupation by no means considered as degrading here, for they are highly paid, and treated almost as equals. But so long as they en-



joy such facilities of bettering their condition, and can marry early, they will naturally renounce this bondage as soon as possible. That the few, or the opulent class, especially those resident in country places, should be put to great inconvenience by this circumstance, is unavoidable, and we must therefore be on our guard, when endeavouring to estimate the happiness of the many, not to sympathise too much with this minority.

I am also aware that the blessing alluded to, and many others which they enjoy, belong to a progressive, as contrasted with a stationary, state of society ;—that they characterize the new colony, where there is abundance of unoccupied land, and a ready outlet to a redundant labouring class. They are not the results of a democratic, as compared with a monarchical or aristocratic constitution, nor the fruits of an absolute equality of religious sects, still less of universal suffrage. Nevertheless, we must not forget how easily all the geographical advantages arising from climate, soil, fine navigable rivers, splendid harbours, and a wilderness in the far West, might have been marred by other laws, and other political institutions. Had Spain colonized this region, how different would have been her career of civilisation ! Had the puritan fathers landed on the banks of the Plata, how many hundreds of large steamers would ere this have been plying the Paraná and Uruguay,—how many railway-trains flying over the Pampas,—how many large schools and universities flourishing in Paraguay !

*Sept. 28.*—We next went by railway from New York to Philadelphia through the state of New Jersey. Large fields of maize, without the stumps of trees rising above the corn, and villas with neat flower-gardens,



seemed a novelty to us after the eye had dwelt for so many hundreds of miles on native forests and new clearings. The streets of Philadelphia rival the finest Dutch towns in cleanliness, and the beautiful avenues of various kinds of trees afford a most welcome shade in summer. We were five days here, and every night there was an alarm of fire, usually a false one ; but the noise of the firemen was tremendous. At the head of the procession came a runner blowing a horn with a deep unearthly sound, next a long team of men (for no horses are employed) drawing a strong rope to which the ponderous engine was attached with a large bell at the top, ringing all the way ; next followed a mob, some with torches, others shouting loudly ; and before they were half out of hearing, another engine follows with a like escort ; the whole affair resembling a scene in *Der Freischutz* or *Robert le Diable*, rather than an act in real life. It is, however, no *sham*, for these young men are ready to risk their lives in extinguishing a fire ; and as an apology for their disturbing the peace of the city when there was no cause, we were told "that the youth here require excitement !" They manage these matters as effectively at Boston without turmoil.



## CHAPTER IV.

*Excursion to New Jersey.—Cretaceous Rocks compared to European.—General Analogy of Fossils, and Distinctness of Species.—Tour to the Anthracite Region of the Alleghanies in Pennsylvania.—Long parallel Ridges and Valleys of these Mountains.—Pottsville.—Absence of Smoke.—Fossil Plants same as in Bituminous Coal.—Stigmariæ.—Great Thickness of Strata.—Origin of Anthracite.—Vast Area of the Appalachian Coal-field.—Progressive Debituminization of Coal from West to East.—General Remarks on the different Groups of Rocks between the Atlantic and the Mississippi.—Law of Structure of the Appalachian Chain discovered by the Professors Rogers.—Increased Folding and Dislocation of Strata on the South-eastern Flank of the Appalachians.—Theory of the Origin of this Mountain Chain.*

## CRETACEOUS STRATA OF NEW JERSEY.

*Sept. 30, 1841.*—FROM Philadelphia I made a geological excursion of several days, to examine the cretaceous strata of New Jersey, in company with Mr. Conrad, to whom we are indebted for several valuable works on the fossil shells of the tertiary, cretaceous, and Silurian strata of the United States. We went first to Bristol on the Delaware to visit Mr. Vanuxem, then engaged in preparing for publication his portion of the State Survey of New York; next by Bordentown to New Egypt, and returned by the Timber Creek, recrossing the Delaware at Camden.

Although in this part of New Jersey there is no white chalk with flints, so characteristic of rocks of this age in Europe, it is still impossible to glance at the fossils, and not to be convinced that Dr. Morton was right



in referring in 1834 the New Jersey deposits to the European cretaceous era. He and Mr. Conrad remarked that the American species of shells were nearly all new, or distinct from those before described, and yet very analogous to those of cretaceous strata already known. The New Jersey rocks have been separated into five subdivisions, but of these two only have proved sufficiently rich in organic remains to admit of their being compared with corresponding strata in distant regions. The lower of these consists in great part of green sand and green marl, and was supposed by Dr. Morton to be the equivalent of the English "Green sand;" while an upper or calcareous rock, composed chiefly of a soft straw-coloured limestone with corals, was thought to correspond with the white chalk of Europe. But after carefully comparing my collection, comprising about 60 species of shells, besides many corals and other remains, I have arrived at the conclusion that the whole of the New Jersey series agrees in its chronological relations with the European white chalk, or, to speak more precisely, with the formations ranging from the Gault to the Maestricht beds inclusive. Among the shells, in determining which I have been assisted by Professor E. Forbes, not more than four out of sixty seem to be quite identical with European species. These are *Belemnites mucronatus*, *Pecten quinquecostatus*, *Ostrea falcata* (*O. larva*, Goldfuss), and *O. vesicularis*. Several others, however, approach very near to, and may be the same as European shells, as for example *Trigonia thoracica*, and at least fifteen may be regarded as good geographical representatives of well-known chalk fossils, belonging, for the most part, to beds above the Gault



in Europe. There are a few very peculiar forms among the American testacea, such as *Terebratula Sayii* (Morton).

In the upper or straw-coloured limestone, I found, on the banks of the Timber Creek, twelve miles south-east of Philadelphia, six species of corals and several echinoderms, chiefly allied to *Upper* Cretaceous forms. The same calcareous stratum also abounds in foraminifera, characteristic of the chalk, comprising, among others, the genera *Cristellaria*, *Rotalina*, and *Nodosaria*. Mr. Owen has recognised, in the fossil reptiles from New Jersey, not only the vertebræ of *Mosasaurus*, previously noticed by Dr. Morton, but also the *Pliosaurus*, and a large crocodile of the Procrælian division, or having its vertebræ like the living species, with the anterior surface concave. There are also many fish of the shark family, analogous to those of the English chalk, and the *Galeus pristodontus* is represented by a species very closely allied, if not identical.

Upon the whole, the list of genera, and the forms of the species, are remarkably analogous to the cretaceous group of Europe; and the agreement of four or five species of Mollusca, being in the proportion of about seven in the hundred, implies no inconsiderable amount of affinity at a distance of between 3000 and 4000 miles from the corresponding assemblage of fossils in Central and Northern Europe, especially when we recollect that there is a difference in latitude of more than ten degrees between the two districts compared. Some of the species common to the opposite sides of the Atlantic, are those which in Europe have the greatest vertical range, as *Pecten quinqucostatus*,



and which might therefore be expected to recur in distant parts of the globe.

At the same time we learn from the facts above mentioned, that the marine fauna, whether vertebrate or invertebrate, testaceous or zoophytic, was divided at the remote epoch under consideration, as it is now, into distinct geographical provinces, although the geologist may everywhere recognise the cretaceous type, whether in Europe or America, and I might add, India. This peculiar type exhibits the preponderating influence of a vast combination of circumstances, prevailing at one period throughout the globe—circumstances dependent on the state of the physical geography, climate, and the organic world in the period immediately preceding, together with a variety of other conditions too long to enumerate here. It would not be difficult for a naturalist to point out the characters stamped on the living Flora and Fauna, by which they also might be distinguished as a whole from those of all former geological epochs. The resemblance of the corals, shells, and insects, of certain temperate regions of the southern hemisphere (Van Dieman's Land, for example), to those of the temperate zone north of the equator, or the close analogy of the arctic and antarctic fauna, the species in both cases being quite different, are illustrations of the common type here alluded to, which is evidently caused or controlled by some general law, and by some mutual relation existing between the animate creation and the state of the habitable surface at any given period.

#### ANTHRACITE FORMATION OF PENNSYLVANIA.

*Oct. 3.*—Having already seen the carboniferous strata



ta at Blossberg in Pennsylvania, where they are very slightly disturbed, and where the coal is bituminous, I was desirous of examining some of the great mines of anthracite coal which occur in the midst of the most bent and inclined strata of the Alleghany mountains. Professor H. D. Rogers, who, with an able corps of assistants, had now nearly brought to a close his elaborate State Survey of Pennsylvania, kindly offered to be my guide, which enabled me in a comparatively short time to obtain an insight into the geological structure of this chain. We first followed the course of the Schuylkill River, passing through a country moderately elevated (B, C, fig. 5. p. 74.), with hills between 200 and 300 feet above the sea, where the rocks consisted chiefly of gneiss. As we went westward we entered a belt, about twenty-five miles broad, of red sandstone and trap (New Red), similar to that before mentioned at New Haven. Having traversed these granitic and secondary formations, we arrived at Reading, fifty-two miles N. W. of Philadelphia, and were then at the base of the easternmost of the great parallel ridges which constitute the Alleghanies or Appalachian chain of mountains. The rocks of this chain consist of the Silurian, Devonian, and Carboniferous groups, which are folded as if they had been subjected to a great lateral pressure when in a soft and yielding state, large portions having been afterwards removed by denudation. No traveller can fail to remark the long and uniform parallel ridges, with intervening valleys, like so many gigantic wrinkles and furrows, which mark the geographical outline of this region; and these external features are found by the geologist to be intimately connected with the internal arrangement of the



stratified rocks. The long and narrow ridges, rarely rising more than 2000 feet above the valleys, and usually not more than half that height, are broken here and there by transverse fissures, which give passage to rivers, and by one of which the Schuylkill flows out at Reading. The strata are most disturbed on the southeastern flank of the mountain chain, where we first entered, and they become less and less broken and inclined as they extend westward.

After passing several belts of the inferior fossiliferous strata, we came to the Anthracite coal-measures of Pottsville on the Schuylkill. Here I was agreeably surprised to see a flourishing manufacturing town with the tall chimneys of numerous furnaces, burning night and day, yet quite free from smoke. Leaving this clear atmosphere, and going down into one of the mines, it was a no less pleasing novelty to find that we could handle the coal without soiling our fingers. The slow combustion of anthracite can be overcome by a strong current of air, not only in large furnaces, but by aid of a blower in the fire-places of private dwellings, and its drying effect on the air of a room may be counteracted by the evaporation of water. As managed by the Americans, I have no hesitation in preferring its use, in spite of the occasional stove-like heat produced by it, to that of bituminous coal in London, coupled with the penalty of living constantly in a dark atmosphere of smoke, which destroys our furniture, dress, and gardens, blackens our public buildings, and renders cleanliness impossible.

In the neighbourhood of Pottsville, there are no less than thirteen seams of anthracite coal, several of which are more than two yards thick. Some of the lowest



of these alternate with white grits and a conglomerate of coarser texture than I had ever seen in any productive coal-measures, some of the pebbles of quartz being of the size of a hen's egg. I was curious to know whether the *Stigmaria* would be found here in the underclays, as at Blossberg before-mentioned, situated 120 miles to the westward. It was easy to ascertain the fact, for several of the coal seams, from eight to ten feet thick, were quarried in the open air, and the strata being vertical, a void space was left after the removal of the fuel, like a straight open fissure, in which we could walk, and see, in the wall on the one side, a stratum originally above, and on the other, that which had been immediately below the coal. On the former, or what is usually termed the roof, were shales with distinct impressions of ferns; among others, the British species *Pecopteris louchitica* and *Neuropteris cordata*, together with trunks and stems of *Sigillaria*, *Lepidodendron*, and *Calamites*; while on the opposite or south-eastern side, was an underclay with numerous *Stigmaria*, often several yards, and even in some cases thirty feet long, with their leaves or rootlets attached.

In this coal-field, as in all the others hitherto observed in America, particular seams of coal are found to be far more persistent than the accompanying beds of shale, sandstone, or limestone. As we proceeded from Pottsville, by Tamaqua, to the Lehigh Summit Mine, we found the beds of grit and shale gradually to thin out, so that several beds of anthracite, at first widely separated, were brought nearer and nearer together, until they united, and formed one mass about fifty feet thick, without any greater interpolated matter

than two  
Chunk  
anthra  
bodily  
thick, t  
of the  
which  
cite, m  
dischar  
ingredi  
feet th  
the ren  
dients,  
thesis o  
now oc  
them to  
the Sti  
Adolph  
doctrine  
that th  
they gr  
plants,  
growth  
seams.

The  
in this  
with th  
repeated  
surfaces  
be super  
beds. T  
that the  
material



than two thin layers of clay with *Stigmaria*. At Mauch Chunk, or the Bear Mountain, this remarkable bed of anthracite is quarried in the open air, and removed bodily together with the overlying sandstone, forty feet thick, the summit of the hill being "scalped," as one of the miners expressed it. The vegetable matter, which is represented by this enormous mass of anthracite, must, before it was condensed by pressure and the discharge of its hydrogen, oxygen, and other volatile ingredients, have been probably between 200 and 300 feet thick. The accumulation of such a thickness of the remains of plants, so unmixed with earthy ingredients, would be most difficult to explain on the hypothesis of their having been drifted into the place they now occupy; but it becomes intelligible if we suppose them to have grown on the spot. Whether we regard the *Stigmaria* as roots, according to the opinion of M. Adolphe Brongniart and Mr. Binney, or embrace the doctrine of their being aquatic plants, no one can doubt that they at least are fossilised on the very spot where they grew; and as all agree that they are not marine plants, they go far to establish the doctrine of the growth *in situ* of the materials of the overlying coal seams.

The prodigious thickness of the carboniferous rocks in this part of the Appalachian chain, is in harmony with the theory already alluded to, which requires the repeated sinking down of many successive terrestrial surfaces, allowing an indefinite quantity of sediment to be superimposed vertically in one continuous series of beds. The surveys of Pennsylvania and Virginia show that the south-east was the quarter whence the coarser materials of the carboniferous rocks were derived, and



there are proofs that the ancient land lay in that direction. The conglomerate which forms the general base of the coal-measures is 1500 feet thick in the Sharp Mountain, where I saw it, near Pottsville; whereas it has only a thickness of 500 feet, about thirty miles to the north-west, and dwindles gradually away when followed still farther in the same direction, till its thickness is reduced to thirty feet. (*Rogers. Trans. Assoc. Amer. Geol.*, 1840—42, p. 440.) The limestones, on the other hand, of the coal-measures, augment as we trace them westward. Similar observations have been made in regard to the Silurian and Devonian formations in New York; the sandstones and all the mechanically-formed rocks thinning out as they go westward, and the limestones thickening, as it were, at their expense. It is, therefore, clear that the ancient land was to the east; the deep sea, with its banks of coral and shells, to the west.

I at first supposed that some deception might have arisen respecting the alleged thickness of the older fossiliferous rocks of the Appalachians, owing to the dislocations and inverted position of the beds, but I was soon convinced that due regard had been paid to the apparent repetitions caused by these disturbances, and I have little doubt that those Silurian and Devonian strata, which do not exceed in their aggregate thickness a mile and a half in the State of New York, acquire more than three times that thickness in the Pennsylvanian Alleghanies.

A few days' observation of the identity of the fossil plants, and the relative position of the anthracite, satisfied me that it was of the same age as the bituminous coal which I had seen at Blossberg. This opinion was,

I beli  
in 18  
to ass  
the b  
The  
yond  
great  
origin  
of pla  
becom  
In the  
coal-m  
or mos  
fragm  
of Pe  
about  
reman  
fessor  
N. E.  
width  
its sup  
extend  
far sou  
This  
reduced  
reasona  
places  
to the  
strata  
mounta  
more  
Now it  
has sho



I believe, first promulgated by Mr. Featherstonehaugh in 1831, at a time when many geologists were disposed to assign a higher antiquity to the anthracite than to the bituminous coal-measures of the United States. The recent surveys have now established this fact beyond all question, and hence it becomes a subject of great interest to inquire how these two kinds of fuel, originating as they did from precisely the same species of plants, and formed at the same period, should have become so very different in their chemical composition. In the first place, I may mention that the anthracite coal-measures above alluded to, occurring in the eastern or most disturbed part of the Appalachian chain, are fragments or outliers of the great continuous coal-field of Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Ohio, which occurs about forty miles to the westward. This coal-field is remarkable for its vast area, for it is described by Professor H. D. Rogers as extending continuously from N. E. to S. W., for a distance of 720 miles, its greatest width being about 180 miles. On a moderate estimate its superficial area amounts to 63,000 square miles. It extends from the northern border of Pennsylvania as far south as near Huntsville in Alabama.

This coal formation, before its original limits were reduced by denudation, must have measured, at a reasonable calculation, 900 miles in length, and in some places more than 200 miles in breadth. By reference to the section (fig 5., p. 74.), it will be seen that the strata of coal are horizontal to the westward of the mountain in the region D, E, and become more and more inclined and folded as we proceed eastward. Now it is invariably found, as Professor H. D. Rogers has shown by chemical analysis, that the coal is most



bituminous towards its western limit, where it remains level and unbroken, and that it becomes progressively debituminized as we travel south-eastward towards the more bent and distorted rocks. Thus, on the Ohio, the proportion of hydrogen, oxygen, and other volatile matters, ranges from forty to fifty per cent. Eastward of this line, on the Monongahela, it still approaches forty per cent., where the strata begin to experience some gentle flexures. On entering the Alleghany Mountains, where the distinct anticlinal axes begin to show themselves, but before the dislocations are considerable, the volatile matter is generally in the proportion of eighteen or twenty per cent. At length, when we arrive at some insulated coal-fields (5, fig. 5.) associated with the boldest flexures of the Appalachian chain, where the strata have been actually turned over, as near Pottsville, we find the coal to contain only from six to twelve per cent. of bitumen, thus becoming a genuine anthracite. (*Trans. of Ass. of Amer. Geol.*, p. 470.)

It appears from the researches of Liebig and other eminent chemists, that when wood and vegetable matter are buried in the earth, exposed to moisture, and partially or entirely excluded from the air, they decompose slowly and evolve carbonic acid gas, thus parting with a portion of their original oxygen. By this means, they become gradually converted into lignite or wood-coal, which contains a larger proportion of hydrogen than wood does. A continuance of decomposition changes this lignite into common or bituminous coal, chiefly by the discharge of carburetted hydrogen, or the gas by which we illumine our streets and houses. According to Bischoff, the inflammable gases which

are a  
the c  
emb  
fiant  
trans  
to wh  
culm.

We  
there  
which  
and t  
under  
may b  
ed for  
ring o  
cracks  
and w  
moven  
Appal  
ent pe  
from v  
not fai  
ter fro

STRU

The  
me na  
of the  
to the  
annex  
frequ  
notion



are always escaping from mineral coal, and are so often the cause of fatal accidents in mines, always contain carbonic acid, carburetted hydrogen, nitrogen, and oil-fiant gas. The disengagement of all these gradually transforms ordinary or bituminous coal into anthracite, to which the various names of splint coal, glance coal, culm, and many others, have been given.

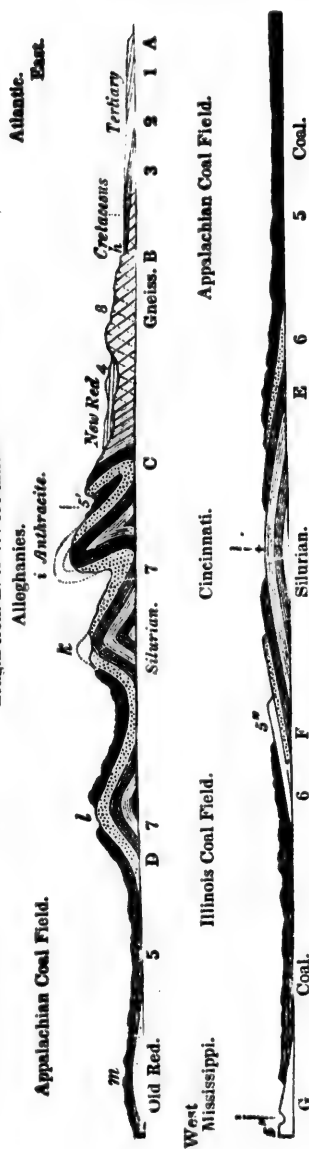
We have seen that, in the Appalachian coal-field, there is an intimate connection between the extent to which the coal has parted with its gaseous contents, and the amount of disturbance which the strata have undergone. The coincidence of these phenomena may be attributed partly to the greater facility afforded for the escape of volatile matter where the fracturing of the rocks had produced an infinite number of cracks and crevices, and also to the heat of the gases and water penetrating these cracks, when the great movements took place, which have rent and folded the Appalachian strata. It is well known that, at the present period, thermal waters and hot vapours burst out from the earth during earthquakes, and these would not fail to promote the disengagement of volatile matter from the carboniferous rocks.

#### STRUCTURE AND ORIGIN OF THE APPALACHIAN CHAIN.

The subjects discussed in the preceding pages, lead me naturally to say something respecting the structure of the Appalachian chain, and its geological relations to the less elevated regions east and west of it. The annexed ideal section (fig. 5.), to which I shall have frequently occasion to refer in the sequel, will give some notion of the principal phenomena, omitting a great



Fig. 5.  
Ideal geological section of the country between the Atlantic and the Mississippi.  
Length from E. to W. 850 miles.



- A. B. Atlantic plain.  
C. Atlantic slope.  
D. Alleghanies or Appalachian chain.  
E. Appalachian coal field west of the mountains.  
F. Dome-shaped out-crop of strata on the Ohio, older than the coal.  
G. H. I. J. K. L. M. N. O. P. Q. R. S. T. U. V. W. X. Y. Z.

References to the different Formations.

1. Miocene tertiary.
2. Eocene tertiary.
3. Cretaceous strata.
4. Red sand-stone with ornithomirids (new red or trias?) usually much invaded by trip.
5. Coal-measures (bituminous coal).
6. Silurian.
7. Devonian.
8. Carboniferous limestone of the Illinois coal field, wanting in the Appalachian.
9. Silurian.
10. Devonian.
11. Carboniferous.
12. Permian.
13. Triassic.
14. Jurassic.
15. Cretaceous.
16. Tertiary.
17. Quaternary.
18. Pleistocene.
19. Holocene.
20. Recent.
21. Modern.
22. Contemporary.
23. Contemporaneous.
24. Coeval.
25. Co-genetic.
26. Co-terminous.
27. Co-extensive.
28. Co-equal.
29. Co-ordinate.
30. Co-terminous.
31. Co-extensive.
32. Co-equal.
33. Co-ordinate.
34. Co-terminous.
35. Co-extensive.
36. Co-equal.
37. Co-ordinate.
38. Co-terminous.
39. Co-extensive.
40. Co-equal.
41. Co-ordinate.
42. Co-terminous.
43. Co-extensive.
44. Co-equal.
45. Co-ordinate.
46. Co-terminous.
47. Co-extensive.
48. Co-equal.
49. Co-ordinate.
50. Co-terminous.
51. Co-extensive.
52. Co-equal.
53. Co-ordinate.
54. Co-terminous.
55. Co-extensive.
56. Co-equal.
57. Co-ordinate.
58. Co-terminous.
59. Co-extensive.
60. Co-equal.
61. Co-ordinate.
62. Co-terminous.
63. Co-extensive.
64. Co-equal.
65. Co-ordinate.
66. Co-terminous.
67. Co-extensive.
68. Co-equal.
69. Co-ordinate.
70. Co-terminous.
71. Co-extensive.
72. Co-equal.
73. Co-ordinate.
74. Co-terminous.
75. Co-extensive.
76. Co-equal.
77. Co-ordinate.
78. Co-terminous.
79. Co-extensive.
80. Co-equal.
81. Co-ordinate.
82. Co-terminous.
83. Co-extensive.
84. Co-equal.
85. Co-ordinate.
86. Co-terminous.
87. Co-extensive.
88. Co-equal.
89. Co-ordinate.
90. Co-terminous.
91. Co-extensive.
92. Co-equal.
93. Co-ordinate.
94. Co-terminous.
95. Co-extensive.
96. Co-equal.
97. Co-ordinate.
98. Co-terminous.
99. Co-extensive.
100. Co-equal.

Note. The dotted lines at i and k express portions of rock removed by denudation, the amount of which may be estimated by supposing similar lines prolonged from other points where different strata end abruptly at the surface.

N. B. The lower section is a continuation of the upper one.



number of details. Starting from the shores of the Atlantic, on the eastern side of the Continent, we first come to a low region (A, B), which was called the alluvial plain by the first geographers. It is occupied by tertiary and cretaceous strata nearly horizontal, and containing in general no hard and solid rocks, and is usually not more than from 50 to 100 feet high, from New Jersey to Virginia. In these states this zone is not many leagues in breadth, but it acquires a breadth of 100 and 150 miles in the Southern States, and a height of several hundred feet towards its western limits. The next belt, from B to C, consists of granitic rocks (hypogene), chiefly gneiss and mica-schist, covered occasionally with unconformable red sandstone, No. 4 (New Red ?), remarkable for its ornithicities. Sometimes also this sandstone rests on the edges of the disturbed paleozoic rocks (as seen in the Section). The region (B, C), sometimes called the "Atlantic Slope," corresponds nearly in average width with the low and flat plain (A, B), and is characterised by hills of moderate height, contrasting strongly, in their rounded shape and altitude, with the long, steep, and lofty parallel ridges of the Alleghany mountains. The out-crop of the strata in these ridges, like the two belts of hypogene and newer rocks (A, B, and B, C), above alluded to, when laid down on a geological map, exhibit long stripes of different colours, running in a N. E. and S. W. direction, in the same way as the lias, chalk, and other secondary formations in the middle and eastern half of England.

The narrow and parallel zones of the Appalachians here mentioned consist of strata, folded into a succession of convex and concave flexures, subsequently laid



open by denudation. The component rocks are of great thickness, all referable to the Silurian, Devonian, and Carboniferous formations. There is no principal or central axis, as in the Pyrenees and many other chains—no nucleus to which all the minor ridges conform; but the chain consists of many nearly equal and parallel foldings, having what the geologists term an anticlinal and synclinal arrangement. This system of hills extends, geologically considered, from Vermont to Alabama, being more than 1000 miles long, from 50 to 150 miles broad, and varying in height from 2000 to 6000 feet. Sometimes the whole assemblage of ridges runs perfectly straight for a distance of more than 50 miles, after which all of them wheel round together, and take a new direction, at an angle of 20 or 30 degrees to the first.

Mr. R. C. Taylor had made considerable progress in unravelling the structure of certain portions of this chain, before the commencement of the State Surveys of Virginia and Pennsylvania, the former conducted by Professor W. B. Rogers, the latter by his brother, Professor H. D. Rogers, both aided by a numerous corps of assistants. To these elaborate and faithful surveys we owe the discovery of the clue to the general law of structure prevailing throughout this important range of mountains, which, however simple it may appear when once made out and clearly explained, might long have been overlooked, amidst so great a mass of complicated details. It appears that the bending and fracture of the beds is greatest on the south-eastern or Atlantic side of the chain, and the strata become less and less disturbed as we go westward, until at length they regain their original or horizontal position. By

reference  
the ea  
the A  
consec  
them  
each a  
arches  
western  
widely  
til we  
an coal

In n  
ings or  
not be  
is also  
moved  
if we at  
indicate

The  
of arran  
been co  
same se  
geologic  
declare  
of the  
formatio  
disturbin  
erted on  
here tha  
invaded  
for miles  
Appalac  
Accor



reference to the section (fig. 5.), it will be seen that on the eastern side, or on the ridges and troughs nearest the Atlantic, the south-eastern dips predominate, in consequence of the beds having been folded back upon themselves, as in *i*, those on the north-western side of each arch having been inverted. The next set of arches (such as *k*) are more open, each having its western side steepest; the next (*l*) opens out still more widely, the next (*m*) still more, and this continues until we arrive at the low and level part of the Appalachian coal-field (*D, E*).

In nature, or in a true section, the number of bendings or parallel folds is so much greater that they could not be expressed in a diagram without confusion. It is also clear that large quantities of rock have been removed by aqueous action or denudation, as will appear if we attempt to complete all the curves in the manner indicated by the dotted lines at *i* and *k*.

The movements which imparted so uniform an order of arrangement to this vast system of rocks must have been contemporaneous, or belonging to one and the same series, depending on some common cause. Their geological date is unusually well defined. We may declare them to have taken place after the deposition of the carboniferous strata (No. 5.), and before the formation of the red sandstone (No. 4.). The greatest disturbing and denuding forces have evidently been exerted on the south-eastern side of the chain, and it is here that igneous or plutonic rocks are observed to have invaded the strata, forming dykes, some of which run for miles in lines parallel to the main direction of the Appalachians, or N.N.E. and S.S.W.

According to the theory of the Professors Rogers, the



wave-like flexures, above alluded to, are explained by supposing the strata, when in a plastic state, to have rested on a widely-extended surface of fluid lava, and elastic vapours and gases. The billowy movement of this subterranean sea of melted matter imparted its undulations to the elastic overlying crust, which was enabled to retain the new shapes thus given to it by the consolidation of the liquid matter injected into fissures.\*

For my own part, I cannot imagine any real connection between the great parallel undulations of the rocks and the real waves of a subjacent ocean of liquid matter, on which the bent and broken crust may once have rested. That there were great lakes, or seas of lava, retained by volcanic heat for ages, in a liquid state beneath the Alleghanies, is highly probable, for the simultaneous eruptions of distant vents in the Andes leave no doubt of the wide subterranean areas permanently occupied by sheets of fluid lava in our own times. It is also consistent with what we know of the laws governing volcanic action to assume that the force operated in a linear direction, for we see trains of volcanic vents breaking out for hundreds of miles along a straight line, and we behold long parallel fissures, often filled with trap or consolidated lava, holding a straight course for great distances through rocks of all ages. The causes of this peculiar mode of development are as yet obscure and unexplained; but the existence of long narrow ranges of mountains, and of great faults and vertical shifts in the strata prolonged for great distances in certain directions, may all be results of the same kind of action. It also accords well

\* Trans. of Ass. of Amer. Geol., 1840—2, p. 515.

with e  
overly  
creasin  
fractur  
opened  
which  
lifting  
belts, p  
ress si  
zone a

Whe  
tion for  
dency  
canic e  
some m  
quence  
seas of  
collapse  
take pl  
the inc  
portion  
a small  
ence of  
tions r  
subside  
in coal  
shales  
from th  
left va  
manne  
causes

\* See  
p. 110.—



with established facts to assume that the solid crust overlying a region where the subterranean heat is increasing in intensity, becomes gradually upheaved, fractured, and distended, the lower part of the newly opened fissures becoming filled with fused matter, which soon consolidates and crystallizes. These uplifting movements may be propagated along narrow belts, placed side by side, and may have been in progress simultaneously, or in succession, in one narrow zone after another.

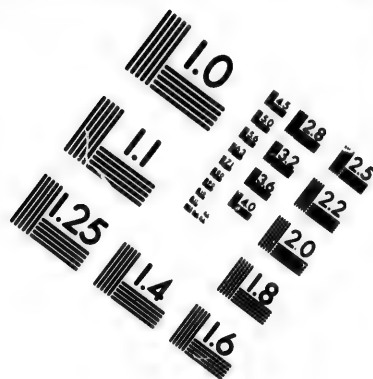
When the expansive force has been locally in operation for a long period, in a given district, there is a tendency in the subterranean heat to diminish;—the volcanic energy is spent, and its position is transferred to some new region. Subsidence then begins, in consequence of the cooling and shrinking of subterranean seas of lava and gaseous matter: and the solid strata collapse in obedience to gravity. If this contraction take place along narrow and parallel zones of country, the incumbent flexible strata would be forced, in proportion as they were let down, to pack themselves into a smaller space, as they conformed to the circumference of a smaller arc. The manner in which undulations may be gradually produced in pliant strata by subsidence is illustrated on a small scale by the creeps in coal-mines; there both the overlying and underlying shales and clays sink down from the ceiling, or rise up from the floor, and fill the galleries which have been left vacant by the abstraction of the fuel.\* In like manner the failure of support arising from subterranean causes may enable the force of gravity, though origi

\* See "Elements of Geology," by the author. 2d ed. vol. i., p. 110.—Boston ed. vol. i. p. 108.

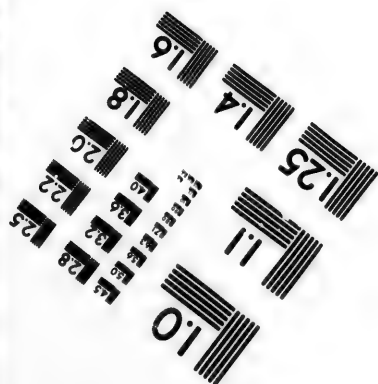
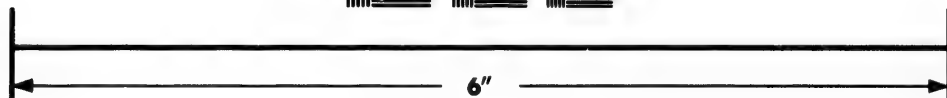








A resolution test chart featuring various patterns of horizontal and vertical lines of increasing frequency. Each pattern is accompanied by a numerical value indicating its resolution. The values include 1.0, 1.1, 1.25, 1.4, 1.6, 1.8, 2.0, 2.2, 2.5, 2.8, 3.2, 3.6, 4.0, 4.5, 5.0, 5.6, 6.3, 7.1, 8.0, 9.0, 10, 11.2, 12.5, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22.5, 25, 28, 32, 36, 40, 45, 50, 56, 63, 71, 80, 90, 100, 112, 125, 140, 160, 180, 200, 225, 250, 280, 320, 360, 400, 450, 500, 560, 630, 710, 800, 900, 1000, 1120, 1250, 1400, 1600, 1800, 2000, 2250, 2500, 2800, 3200, 3600, 4000, 4500, 5000, 5600, 6300, 7100, 8000, 9000, 10000, 11200, 12500, 14000, 16000, 18000, 20000, 22500, 25000, 28000, 32000, 36000, 40000, 45000, 50000, 56000, 63000, 71000, 80000, 90000, 100000, 112000, 125000, 140000, 160000, 180000, 200000, 225000, 250000, 280000, 320000, 360000, 400000, 450000, 500000, 560000, 630000, 710000, 800000, 900000, 1000000, 1120000, 1250000, 1400000, 1600000, 1800000, 2000000, 2250000, 2500000, 2800000, 3200000, 3600000, 4000000, 4500000, 5000000, 5600000, 6300000, 7100000, 8000000, 9000000, 10000000, 11200000, 12500000, 14000000, 16000000, 18000000, 20000000, 22500000, 25000000, 28000000, 32000000, 36000000, 40000000, 45000000, 50000000, 56000000, 63000000, 71000000, 80000000, 90000000, 100000000, 112000000, 125000000, 140000000, 160000000, 180000000, 200000000, 225000000, 250000000, 280000000, 320000000, 360000000, 400000000, 450000000, 500000000, 560000000, 630000000, 710000000, 800000000, 900000000, 1000000000, 1120000000, 1250000000, 1400000000, 1600000000, 1800000000, 2000000000, 2250000000, 2500000000, 2800000000, 3200000000, 3600000000, 4000000000, 4500000000, 5000000000, 5600000000, 6300000000, 7100000000, 8000000000, 9000000000, 10000000000, 11200000000, 12500000000, 14000000000, 16000000000, 18000000000, 20000000000, 22500000000, 25000000000, 28000000000, 32000000000, 36000000000, 40000000000, 45000000000, 50000000000, 56000000000, 63000000000, 71000000000, 80000000000, 90000000000, 100000000000, 112000000000, 125000000000, 140000000000, 160000000000, 180000000000, 200000000000, 225000000000, 250000000000, 280000000000, 320000000000, 360000000000, 400000000000, 450000000000, 500000000000, 560000000000, 630000000000, 710000000000, 800000000000, 900000000000, 1000000000000, 1120000000000, 1250000000000, 1400000000000, 1600000000000, 1800000000000, 2000000000000, 2250000000000, 2500000000000, 2800000000000, 3200000000000, 3600000000000, 4000000000000, 4500000000000, 5000000000000, 5600000000000, 6300000000000, 7100000000000, 8000000000000, 9000000000000, 10000000000000, 11200000000000, 12500000000000, 14000000000000, 16000000000000, 18000000000000, 20000000000000, 22500000000000, 25000000000000, 28000000000000, 32000000000000, 36000000000000, 40000000000000, 45000000000000, 50000000000000, 56000000000000, 63000000000000, 71000000000000, 80000000000000, 90000000000000, 100000000000000, 112000000000000, 125000000000000, 140000000000000, 160000000000000, 180000000000000, 200000000000000, 225000000000000, 250000000000000, 280000000000000, 320000000000000, 360000000000000, 400000000000000, 450000000000000, 500000000000000, 560000000000000, 630000000000000, 710000000000000, 800000000000000, 900000000000000, 1000000000000000, 1120000000000000, 1250000000000000, 1400000000000000, 1600000000000000, 1800000000000000, 2000000000000000, 2250000000000000, 2500000000000000, 2800000000000000, 3200000000000000, 3600000000000000, 4000000000000000, 4500000000000000, 5000000000000000, 5600000000000000, 6300000000000000, 7100000000000000, 8000000000000000, 9000000000000000, 10000000000000000, 11200000000000000, 12500000000000000, 14000000000000000, 16000000000000000, 18000000000000000, 20000000000000000, 22500000000000000, 25000000000000000, 28000000000000000, 32000000000000000, 36000000000000000, 40000000000000000, 45000000000000000, 50000000000000000, 56000000000000000, 63000000000000000, 71000000000000000, 80000000000000000, 90000000000000000, 100000000000000000, 112000000000000000, 125000000000000000, 140000000000000000, 160000000000000000, 180000000000000000, 200000000000000000, 225000000000000000, 250000000000000000, 280000000000000000, 320000000000000000, 360000000000000000, 400000000000000000,



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**







nally exerted vertically, to bend and squeeze the rocks as if they had been subjected to lateral pressure.

“Earthquakes have raised to heaven the humble vale,  
And gulphs the mountain’s mighty mass entomb’d,  
And where th’ Atlantic rolls, wide continents have bloom’d.”

In applying these lines to the physical revolutions of the territory at present under consideration, we must remember that the continent which bloomed to the eastward, or where the Atlantic now rolls its waves (see p. 70.), was anterior to the origin of the carboniferous strata which were derived from its ruins; whereas the elevation and subsidence supposed to have given rise to the Appalachian ridges was subsequent to the deposition of the coal-measures. But all these great movements of oscillation were again distinct from the last upheaval which brought up the whole region above the level of the sea, laying dry the horizontal New Red Sandstone (No. 4., fig. 5.), as well as a great part of, if not all, the Appalachian chain.

The largest amount of denudation is found, as might have been expected, on the south-eastern side of the chain, where the force of expansion and contraction, of elevation and subsidence, has been greatest. The first set of denuding operations may have taken place when the strata, including the carboniferous, were first raised above the sea; a second, when they sank again; a third, when the Red Sandstone (No. 4.), after it had been thrown down on the truncated edges of the older strata, participated in the waste. The great extent of solid materials thus removed, must add, in no small degree, to the difficulty of restoring in imagination the successive changes which have occurred, and of accounting in a satisfactory manner for the origin of this mountain chain.

Wood  
Pe  
Flo  
at  
For  
Un  
Ins  
—F  
ant  
tion

Od  
sum  
sylva  
surve  
order  
struct  
a mil  
ologic  
cover  
everg  
the le  
sembl  
fainte  
in for  
sil Pec  
We  
this m  
church  
a pato  
Englis



CHAPTER V.

*Wooded Ridges of the Alleghany Mountains.—German Patois in Pennsylvania.—Lehigh Summit Mine.—Effects of Ice during a Flood on the Delaware.—Election of a Governor at Trenton and at Philadelphia.—Journey to Boston.—Autumnal Tints of the Foliage.—Boston the Seat of Commerce, of Government, and of a University.—Lectures at the Lowell Institute.—Influence of oral Instruction in Literature and Science.—Fees of Public Lecturers.—Educational Funds sunk in costly Buildings.—Advantages of anti-building Clauses.—Blind Asylum.—Lowell Factories.—National Schools.—Equality of Sects.—Society in Boston.*

October 7. 1841.—THE steep slopes, as well as the summits of the ridges in the anthracite region of Pennsylvania, are so densely covered with wood, that the surveyors were obliged to climb to the tops of trees, in order to obtain general views of the country, and construct a geographical map on the scale of two inches to a mile, on which they laid down the result of their geological observations. Under the trees, the ground is covered with the *Rhododendron*, *Kalmia* and another evergreen called Sweet Fern (*Comptonia asplenifolia*), the leaves of which have a very agreeable odour, resembling that of our bog-myrtle (*Myrica Gale*), but fainter. The leaves are so like those of a fern or *Pteris* in form, that the miners call the impressions of the fossil *Pecopteris*, in the coal-shales "sweet fern."

We found the German language chiefly spoken in this mountainous region, and preached in most of the churches, as at Reading. It is fast degenerating into a patois, and it is amusing to see many Germanized English words introduced even into the newspapers,



such as *turnpeik* for turnpike, *fense* for fence, *flauer* for flour, or others, such as *jail*, which have been adopted without alteration.

From the Lehigh Summit Mine, we descended for nine miles on a railway impelled by our own weight, in a small car at the rate of twenty miles an hour. A man sat in front checking our speed by a drag on the steeper declivities, and oiling the wheels without stopping. The coal is let down by the same railroad, sixty mules being employed to draw up the empty cars every day. In the evening the mules themselves are sent down standing four abreast, and feeding out of mangers the whole way. We saw them start in a long train of waggons, and were told, that so completely do they acquire the notion that it is their business through life to pull weights up hill, and ride down at their ease, that if any of them are afterwards taken away from the mine and set to other occupations, they willingly drag heavy loads up steep ascents, but obstinately refuse to pull any vehicle down hill, coming to a dead halt at the commencement of the slightest slope.

The general effect of the long unbroken summits of the ridges of the Alleghany Mountains is very monotonous and unpicturesque: but the scenery is beautiful, where we meet occasionally with a transverse gorge through which a large river escapes. After visiting the Beaver Meadow coal field, we left the mountains by one of these openings, called the Lehigh Gap, wooded on both sides, and almost filled up by the Lehigh River, a branch of the Delaware, the banks of which we now followed to Trenton in New Jersey.

On our way, we heard much of a disastrous flood which occurred last spring on the melting of the snow

and s  
many  
the D  
above  
worn  
en a  
with  
path,  
which  
sing  
the f

On

Jerse  
the b  
repre  
chos  
frage  
credi  
bula  
rying  
nam  
Libe  
Occ  
"T  
et,"  
whi  
drun  
tick  
and  
had  
T  
four  
of



and swept away several bridges, causing the loss of many lives. I observed the trees on the right bank of the Delaware at an elevation of about twenty-four feet above the present surface of the river, with their bark worn through by the sheets of ice which had been driven against them. The canal was entirely filled up with gravel and large stones to the level of the towing path, twenty feet above the present level of the stream, which appeared to me to be only explicable by supposing the stones to have been frozen into and carried by the floating ice.

*Oct. 11.*—Reaching Trenton, the capital of New Jersey, late in the evening, we found the town in all the bustle of a general election. A new governor and representatives for the State legislature were to be chosen. As parties are nearly balanced, and the suffrage universal, the good order maintained was highly creditable. Processions, called "parades," were perambulating the streets headed by bands of music, and carrying transparencies with lights in them, in which the names of different counties, and mottoes, such as Union, Liberty, and Equality, were conspicuously inscribed. Occasionally a man called out with a stentorian voice, "The ticket, the whole ticket, and nothing but the ticket," which was followed by a loud English hurra, while at intervals a single blow was struck on a great drum, as if to imitate the firing of a gun. On their tickets were printed the names of the governor, officers, and members for whom the committee of each party had determined to vote.

The next day on our return to Philadelphia, we found that city also in the ferment of an election, bands of music being placed in open carriages, each drawn



by four horses, and each horse decorated with a flag, attached to its shoulder, which has a gay effect. All day a great bell tolls at the State house, to remind the electors of their duties. It sounded like a funeral; and on my inquiring of a bystander what it meant, one of the democratic party answered, "It is the knell of the whigs." In their popular addresses, some candidates ask the people whether they will vote for the whigs who will lay on new taxes. As it is well known, that such taxes must be imposed, if the dividends on the State bonds are to be paid, these popular appeals are ominous. The rapid fall in the value of State securities shows that the public generally have no confidence that the majority of the electors will be proof against the insidious arts of these demagogues.

*Oct. 14.*—We came from Philadelphia by New York to Boston, 300 miles, without fatigue in twenty-four hours, by railway and steam-boat, having spent three hours in an hotel at New York, and sleeping soundly for six hours in the cabin of a commodious steamer as we passed through Long Island Sound. The economy of time in travelling here is truly admirable. On getting out of the cars in the morning, we were ushered into a spacious saloon, where with 200 others we sat down to breakfast, and learnt with surprise, that, while thus agreeably employed, we had been carried rapidly in a large ferry-boat without perceiving any motion across a broad estuary to Providence in the State of Rhode Island.

Many trees in New Jersey, Connecticut, and Massachusetts, have now begun to assume their autumnal tints, especially the maples, while the oaks retain their vivid green colour. I can only compare the brightness



of the faded leaves, scarlet, purple, and yellow, to that of tulips. It is now the Indian summer, a season of warm sunny weather, which often succeeds to the first frost and rain, a time which the Indians employed in hunting and laying up a store of game for the winter.

*Boston, Oct. 14. to Dec. 3. 1841.*—It is fortunate that Boston is at once a flourishing commercial port, and the seat of the best endowed university in America, for Cambridge, where Harvard College is situated, is so near, that it may be considered as a suburb of the metropolis. The medical lectures, indeed, are delivered in the city, where the great hospitals are at hand. The mingling of the professors, both literary and scientific, with the eminent lawyers, clergymen, physicians, and principal merchants of the place, forms a society of a superior kind; and to these may be added several persons, who, having inherited ample fortunes, have successfully devoted their lives to original researches in history, and other departments. It is also a political advantage of no small moment that the legislature assembles here, as its members, consisting in great part of small proprietors farming their own land, are thus brought into contact with a community in a very advanced state of civilisation, so that they are under the immediate check of an enlightened public opinion. It is far more usual to place the capital, as it is called, in the centre of the State, often in some small village or town of no importance, and selected from mere geographical considerations, which might well be disregarded in a country enjoying such locomotive facilities. An immense sacrifice is then required from those men of independent fortune, who, for patriotic motives, must leave the best society of a large city, to spend the win-



ter in some remote spot in the discharge of public duties.

I had been invited when in England by Mr. Lowell, trustee and director of a richly endowed literary and scientific institution in this city, to deliver a course of twelve lectures on geology during the present autumn. According to the conditions of the bequest, the public have gratuitous admission to these lectures; but by several judicious restrictions, such as requiring applications for tickets to be made some weeks before, and compliance with other rules, the trustee has obviated much of the inconvenience arising from this privilege, for it is well known that a class which pays nothing is irregular and careless in its attendance. As the number of tickets granted for my lectures amounted to 4500, and the class usually attending consisted of more than 3000 persons, it was necessary to divide them into two sets, and repeat to one of them the next afternoon the lecture delivered on the preceding evening. It is by no means uncommon for professors who have not the attraction of novelty, or the advantage which I happened to enjoy, of coming from a great distance, to command audiences in this institution as numerous as that above alluded to. The subjects of their discourses are various, such as natural history, chemistry, the fine arts, natural theology, and many others. Among my hearers were persons of both sexes, of every station in society, from the most affluent and eminent in the various learned professions to the humblest mechanics, all well dressed and observing the utmost decorum.

The theatres were never in high favour here, and most of them have been turned to various secular and ecclesiastical uses, and among others into lecture

room  
men  
the  
teach  
not fa  
and  
colle  
tive  
merc  
may  
desir  
is ap  
coun  
tende  
home  
ment

W  
Mass  
that  
twen  
witho  
eight  
aggre  
ing t  
mean  
city v  
certai  
were  
ed by  
devol  
speak  
hand



rooms, to which many of the public resort for amusement as they might formerly have done to a play, after the labours of the day are over. If the selection of teachers be in good hands, institutions of this kind cannot fail to exert a powerful influence in improving the taste and intellectual condition of the people, especially where college is quitted at an early age for the business of active life, and where there is always danger in a commercial community that the desire of money-making may be carried to excess. It is, moreover, peculiarly desirable in a democratic state, where the public mind is apt to be exclusively absorbed in politics, and in a country where the free competition of rival sects has a tendency to produce not indifferentism, as some at home may be disposed to think, but too much excitement in religious matters.

We are informed by Mr. Everett, late governor of Massachusetts (since minister of the U. S. in England), that before the existence of the Lowell Foundation, twenty-six courses of lectures were delivered in Boston, without including those which consisted of less than eight lectures, and these courses were attended in the aggregate by about 13,500 persons. But notwithstanding the popularity of this form of instruction, the means of the literary and scientific institutions of the city were wholly inadequate to hold out a liberal and certain reward to men of talent and learning. There were some few instances of continuous courses delivered by men of eminence; but the task more commonly devolved upon individuals who cultivated the art of speaking merely to become the vehicles of second-hand information, and who were not entitled to speak



with authority, and from the fulness of their own knowledge.\*

The rich who have had a liberal education, who know how to select the best books, and can afford to purchase them, who can retreat into the quiet of their libraries from the noise of their children, and, if they please, obtain the aid of private tuition, may doubt the utility of public lectures on the fine arts, history, and the physical sciences. But oral instruction is, in fact, the only means by which the great mass of the middling and lower classes can have their thoughts turned to these subjects, and it is the fault of the higher classes if the information they receive be unsound, and if the business of the teacher be not held in high honour. The whole body of the clergy in every country, and, under popular forms of government, the leading politicians, have been in all ages convinced that they must avail themselves of this method of teaching, if they would influence both high and low. No theological dogma is so abstruse, no doctrine of political economy or legislative science so difficult, as to be deemed unfit to be preached from the pulpit, or inculcated on the hustings. The invention of printing, followed by the rapid and general dispersion of the cheap daily newspaper, or the religious tract, have been by no means permitted to supersede the instrumentality of oral teaching, and the powerful sympathy and excitement created by congregated numbers. If the leading patrons and cultivators of literature and physical science neglect this ready and efficacious means of interesting the multitude in their pursuits, they are wanting to

\* See "Everett's Memoir of John Lowell." Boston, 1840.



themselves, and have no right to complain of the apathy or indifference of the public.

To obtain the services of eminent men engaged in original researches, for the delivery of systematic courses of lectures, is impossible without the command of much larger funds than are usually devoted to this object. When it is stated that the fees at the Lowell Institute at Boston are on a scale more than three times higher than the remuneration awarded to the best literary and scientific public lecturers in London, it will at first be thought hopeless to endeavour to carry similar plans into execution in other large cities, whether at home or in the United States. In reality, however, the sum bequeathed by the late Mr. John Lowell for his foundation, though munificent, was by no means enormous, not much exceeding 70,000*l.*, which, according to the usual fate awaiting donations for educational objects, would have been all swallowed up in the erection of costly buildings, after which the learned would be invited to share the scanty leavings of the "Committee of Taste," and the merciless architect, "*reliquias Danaûm atque immitis Achillei.*" But in the present case, the testator provided in his will that not a single dollar should be spent in brick and mortar, in consequence of which proviso, a spacious room was at once hired, and the intentions of the donor carried immediately into effect, without a year's delay.

If there be any who imagine that a donation might be so splendid as to render an anti-building clause superfluous, let them remember the history of the Girard bequest in Philadelphia. Half a million sterling, with the express desire of the testator that the expenditure on architectural ornament should be moderate! Yet



this vast sum is so nearly consumed, that it is doubtful whether the remaining funds will suffice for the completion of the palace—splendid, indeed, but extremely ill-fitted for a school-house! It is evident that when a passion so strong as that for building is to be resisted, total abstinence alone, as in the case of spirituous liquors, will prove an adequate safeguard. In the “old country,” the same fatal propensity has stood in the way of all the most spirited efforts of modern times to establish and endow new institutions for the diffusion of knowledge. It is well known that the sum expended in the purchase of the ground, and in the erection of that part of University College, London, the exterior of which is nearly complete, exceeded 100,000*l.*, one-third of which was spent on the portico and dome, or the purely ornamental, the rooms under the dome having remained useless, and not even fitted up at the expiration of fifteen years. When the professor of chemistry enquired for the chimney of his laboratory, he was informed that there was none, and to remove the defect, a flue was run up which encroached on a handsome staircase, and destroyed the symmetry of the architect’s design. Still greater was the dismay of the anatomical professor on learning that his lecture room was to conform to the classical model of an ancient theatre, designed for the recitation of Greek plays. Sir Charles Bell remarked that an anatomical theatre, to be perfect, should approach as nearly as possible to the shape of a well, that every student might look down and see distinctly the subject under demonstration. At a considerable cost the room was altered, so as to serve the ends for which it was wanted.

The liberal sums contributed by the public for the



foundation of a rival college were expended in like manner long before the academical body came into existence. When the professor of chemistry at King's College asked for his laboratory, he was told it had been entirely forgotten in the plan, but that he might take the kitchen on the floor below, and by ingenious machinery carry up his apparatus for illustrating experiments, through a trap door into an upper story, where his lecture room was placed.

Still these collegiate buildings, in support of which the public came forward so liberally, were left, like the Girard College, half finished; whereas, if the same funds had been devoted to the securing of teachers of high acquirements, station, character, and celebrity; and if rooms of moderate dimensions had been at first hired, while the classes of pupils remained small, a generation would not have been lost, the new Institutions would have risen more rapidly to that high rank which they are one day destined to attain, and testamentary bequests would have flowed in more copiously for buildings well adapted to the known and ascertained wants of the establishment. None would then grudge the fluted column, the swelling dome, and the stately portico; and literature and science would continue to be the patrons of architecture, without being its victims.

Prescott, in his admirable work on the Conquest of Mexico, remarks, when discussing the extent of the ancient Aztec civilisation, that the progress made by the Mexicans in astronomy, and especially the fact of their having a general board for public education and the fine arts, proves more in favour of their advancement, than the noble architectural monuments which



they and their kindred tribes erected. "Architecture," he observes, "is a sensual gratification, and addresses itself to the eye; it is the form in which the resources of a semi-civilised people are most likely to be lavished."\*

Mr. John Lowell, a native of Massachusetts, after having carefully studied the educational establishments of his own country, visited London in 1833, and having sojourned there some months, paying a visit to the University of Cambridge and other places, he pursued his travels in the hope of exploring India and China. On his way he passed through Egypt, where, being attacked, while engaged in making a collection of antiquities, by an intermittent fever, of which he soon afterwards died, he drew up his last will in 1835, amidst the ruins of Thebes, leaving half of his noble fortune for the foundation of a Literary Institute in his native city. It has already appeared how admirably he appreciated the exact point of "semi-civilisation" which the Anglo-Saxon race had then attained on both sides of the Atlantic.

I spent an agreeable day at Cambridge, visiting several of the professors at Harvard University, and hearing one of them, Henry Ware, author of "The Christian Character," a work reprinted, and much read in England, preach a sermon in the College Chapel. His text, "Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself," led him to treat of self-love, and to explain how this natural passion might be indulged to any extent, provided, in obedience to the divine commandment, our love for others increases in the like ratio. I heard afterwards, with great regret, of the death of this able and amiable man.

In the Blind Asylum I saw Laura Bridgman, now

\* Conquest of Mexico, vol. i. p. 155



in her twelfth year. At the age of two she lost her sight and hearing by a severe illness, but although deaf, dumb, and blind, her mind has been so advanced by the method of instruction pursued by Dr. Howe, that she shows more intelligence and quickness of feeling than many girls of the same age who are in full possession of all their senses. The excellent reports of Dr. Howe, on the gradual development of her mind, have been long before the public, and have recently been cited by Mr. Dickens, together with some judicious observations of his own. Perhaps no one of the cases of a somewhat analogous nature, on which Dugald Stewart and others have philosophised, has furnished so many new and valuable facts illustrating the extent to which all intellectual development is dependent on the instrumentality of the senses in discerning external objects, and, at the same time, in how small a degree the relative acuteness of the organs of sense determine the moral and intellectual superiority of the individual.

*Nov. 15.*—Went twenty-six miles to the north of Boston, by an excellent railway, to the manufacturing town of Lowell, which has sprung up entirely in the last sixteen years, and now contains about 20,000 inhabitants. The mills are remarkably clean, and well warmed, and almost all for making cotton and woollen goods, which are exported to the West. The young women from the age of eighteen to twenty-five, who attend to the spinning-wheels, are good-looking and neatly dressed, chiefly the daughters of New England farmers, sometimes of the poorer clergy. They belong, therefore, to a very different class from our manufacturing population, and after remaining a few years in the factory, return to their homes, and usually marry.



We are told that, to work in these factories is considered far more eligible for a young woman than domestic service, as they can save more, and have stated hours of work (twelve hours a day !), after which they are at liberty. Their moral character stands very high, and a girl is paid off, if the least doubt exists on that point. Boarding-houses, usually kept by widows, are attached to each mill, in which the operatives are required to board; the men and women being separate. This regard for the welfare and conduct of the work-people when they are not on actual duty is comparatively rare in England, where the greater supply of labour would render such interference and kind superintendence much more practicable. Still we could not expect that the results would be equally satisfactory with us, on account of the lower grade of the operatives, and the ignorance of the lower classes in England. In regard to the order, dress, and cleanliness of the people, these merits are also exemplified in the rural districts of Lancashire, and it is usually in our large towns alone, that the work people are unhealthy and squalid, especially where a number of the poor Irish live crowded together in bad dwellings.

The factories at Lowell are not only on a great scale, but have been so managed as to yield high profits, a fact which should be impressed on the mind of every foreigner who visits them, lest, after admiring the gentility of manner and dress of the women and men employed, he should go away with the idea that he had been seeing a model mill, or a set of gentlemen and ladies, playing at factory for their amusement. There are few children employed, and those under fifteen are compelled by law to go to school three months in the

year,  
is inf  
strong  
the le  
submi  
city al  
equal  
the wh  
schools  
teache  
buildin

The  
familie  
which  
and to  
funds,  
Bible i  
in near  
of book  
ticular  
expecte  
them t  
truth, a  
the pu  
works  
going p

As th  
taining  
been ca  
combin  
uted.  
erty he  
the wes



year, under penalty of a heavy fine. If this regulation is infringed, informers are not wanting, for there is a strong sympathy in the public mind with all acts of the legislature, enforcing education. The Bostonians submit to pay annually for public instruction in their city alone, the sum of 30,000*l.* sterling, which is about equal to the parliamentary grant of this year (1841) for the whole of England, while the sum raised for free schools in the state this year, by taxes for wages of teachers, and their board, and exclusive of funds for building, exceeds 100,000*l.* sterling.

The law ordains, that every district containing fifty families shall maintain one school, for the support of which the inhabitants are required to tax themselves, and to appoint committees annually for managing the funds, and choosing their own schoolmasters. The Bible is allowed to be read in all, and is actually read in nearly all the schools; but the law prohibits the use of books "calculated to favour the tenets of any particular sect of Christians." Parents and guardians are expected to teach their own children, or to procure them to be taught, what they believe to be religious truth, and for this purpose, besides family worship and the pulpit, there are Sunday-schools. The system works well among this church-building and church-going population.

As there is no other region in Anglo-saxondom, containing 750,000 souls, where national education has been carried so far, it is important to enquire to what combination of causes its success is mainly to be attributed. First, there is no class in want or extreme poverty here, partly because the facility of migrating to the west, for those who are without employment, is so



great, and also, in part, from the check to improvident marriages, created by the high standard of living to which the lowest work-people aspire, a standard which education is raising higher and higher from day to day. Secondly, I have often heard politicians of opposite parties declare, that there is no safety for the republic, now that the electoral suffrage has been so much extended, unless every exertion is made to raise the moral and intellectual condition of the masses. The fears entertained by the rich of the dangers of ignorance, is the only good result which I could discover tending to counterbalance the enormous preponderance of evil arising in the United States from so near an approach to universal suffrage. Thirdly, the political and social equality of all religious sects,—a blessing which the New Englanders do not owe to the American revolution, for it was fully recognised and enjoyed under the supremacy of the British crown. This equality tends to remove the greatest stumbling block, still standing in the way of national instruction in Great Britain, where we allow one generation after another of the lower classes to grow up without being taught good morals, good behaviour, and the knowledge of things useful and ornamental, because we cannot all agree as to the precise theological doctrines in which they are to be brought up. The religious toleration of the different sects towards each other in Massachusetts is, I fear, accompanied by as little Christian charity as at home, and families are often divided, and the best relations of private life disturbed, by the bitterness of sectarian dogmatism and jealousy; but, politically, all sects are ready to unite against the encroachments of any other, and a great degree of religious freedom

is et  
whic  
temp  
creed

In  
centl  
lotme  
have  
with  
may  
tion.

one s  
same  
of th  
whose  
future  
will b

Du  
did ba  
lately  
opport  
not se  
can le  
my le  
ciety  
during  
societ  
As soc  
etly,  
from  
afterw  
numb

'Th



is enjoyed, in consequence of there being no sect to which it is *ungenteel* to belong, no consciences sorely tempted by ambition to conform to a more fashionable creed.

In New York the Roman Catholic priests have recently agitated with no small success for a separate allotment of their share of the education fund. They have allied themselves, as in the Belgian revolution, with the extreme democracy to carry their point, and may materially retard the general progress of education. But there is no reason to apprehend that any one sect in New England will have power to play the same game; and these states are the chief colonizers of the West—*gentis cunabula*, by the rapidity of whose multiplication and progress in civilization the future prospects of the whole confederacy of republics will be mainly determined.

During our stay at Boston the citizens gave a splendid ball to the Prince de Joinville, and the Mayor politely sent us tickets of invitation, which gave me an opportunity of satisfying myself that foreigners have not said too much of the beauty of the young American ladies. In general I was so much occupied with my lectures, or in communicating to the Geological Society of London some of the results of my observations during my late tour, that I had no time to enter into society, or to accept the hospitalities of the inhabitants. As soon as it was understood that I wished to live quietly, all pressing invitations were politely abstained from until I had finished my course of lectures; and, afterwards, when I found it necessary to decline a large number of them, no offence was taken.

'The twenty-fifth of November was appointed by the



Governor of the State to be what is here called Thanksgiving-Day—an institution as old as the times of the Pilgrim Fathers, one day in the year being set apart for thanksgiving for the mercies of the past year. As a festival it stands very much in the place of Christmas Day as kept in England and Germany, being always in the winter, and every body going to church in the morning and meeting in large family parties in the evening. To one of these we were most kindly welcomed; and the reception which we met with here and in the few families to which we had letters of introduction, made us entirely forget that we were foreigners. Several of our new acquaintances indeed had travelled in England and on the Continent, and were in constant correspondence with our own literary and scientific friends, so that we were always hearing from them some personal news of those with whom we were most intimate in Europe, and we often reflected with surprise in how many parts of England we should have felt less at home.

I remember an eminent English writer once saying to me, when he had just read a recently-published book on the United States, "I wonder the author went so far to see disagreeable people, when there are so many of them at home." It would certainly be strange if persons of refined habits, even without being fastidious, who travel to see life, and think it their duty, with a view of studying character, to associate indiscriminately with all kinds of people, visiting the first strangers who ask them to their houses, and choosing their companions without reference to congeniality of taste, pursuits, manners, or opinions, did not find society in their own or any other country in the world intolerable.

Fall of  
ven-  
stone  
Mus  
Why  
Slave  
Tert  
and  
of the  
feren  
the p

Now  
of Rom  
a heav  
bright  
scene  
streets,  
warnin  
was no  
States,  
and we  
we fou  
ingly t  
ologica  
Hubba  
stone s  
small v  
in Con  
grained  
six feet



## CHAPTER VI.

*Fall of Snow and Sleigh-driving at Boston.—Journey to New Haven.—Ichthyolites of Durham, Connecticut.—Age of Red Sandstone.—Income of Farmers.—Baltimore.—Washington.—National Museum.—Natural Impediments to the Growth of Washington.—Why chosen for the Capital.—Richmond, Virginia.—Effects of Slave-labour.—Low Region on the Atlantic Border, occupied by Tertiary Strata.—Infusorial Bed at Richmond.—Miocene Shells and Corals in the Cliffs of the James River compared with Fossils of the European Crag and Faluns.—Analogy of Forms and Difference of Species.—Proportion of Species.—Commencement of the present Geographical Distribution of Mollusca.*

Nov. 29. 1841.—ALTHOUGH we were in the latitude of Rome, and there were no mountains near us, we had a heavy fall of snow at Boston this day, followed by bright sunshine and hard frost. It was a cheerful scene to see the sleighs gliding noiselessly about the streets, and to hear the bells, tied to the horses' heads, warning the passer-by of their swift approach. As it was now the best season to geologise in the southern States, I determined to make a flight in that direction; and we had gone no farther than New Haven before we found that all the snow had disappeared. I accordingly took the opportunity when there of making a geological excursion, with Mr. Silliman, jun., Professor Hubbard, and Mr. Whelpley, to examine the red sandstone strata, containing Ichthyolites, by the side of a small waterfall at Middlefield, one mile from Durham, in Connecticut. The remains of fish occur in a fine-grained slaty sandstone, black and bituminous, about six feet thick, which alternates with a coarse conglom-



erate, some of the quartz pebbles being two or three inches in diameter. Small fragments of fossil wood and a ripple-marked surface were observed in some of the strata near the fossil-fish. This sandstone is newer than the coal, but we have not yet sufficient data to pronounce very decidedly on its true age. The foot-steps of numerous species of birds afford no indication, because in Europe we have as yet no traces of birds in rocks of such high antiquity, and consequently no corresponding term of comparison. As to the fish, they have most of them been referred to the genus *Paleoniscus*, and have been supposed, therefore, by analogy, to imply that the Connecticut deposit is of the age of the Magnesian limestone (Lower New Red or Permian Group of Europe). But Mr. Redfield has expressed some doubt whether these American fossils might not constitute a new, though allied genus, having the scales, and apparently the vertebrae, prolonged to a more limited extent into the upper lobe of the tail than in the European species. In the language of M. Agassiz, they are less heterocercal than the European *Paleoniscus*, and, therefore, less closely related to that type which is universal in the more ancient or paleozoic formations. Sir P. Egerton, who confirms these remarks of Mr. Redfield, and adds other distinctions, such as the strong and conical teeth, and the smallness of the oral aperture, informs me that in the five or six distinct species obtained by me from Durham, Connecticut, he finds the scales to be smoother than in the *Paleonisci* of the Magnesian limestone; for the latter have their scales more or less striated and serrated on the posterior margins. The American fossils approximate in the character above alluded to or in having

smooth  
evident  
Profes  
covery  
the P  
Europ  
longs

In t  
snow-s  
Octobe  
down t  
leading  
I hear  
tained  
scarce

The  
picture  
poverty  
persons,  
small p  
giving  
would n  
An old g  
tive plac  
that in  
division  
efforts  
West, I  
necticut  
the conc

Pursu  
snow-sto  
at Phila



smooth scales, to the coal-measure species, so that the evidence derived from Ichthyology is very conflicting. Professor H. D. Rogers infers from his brother's discovery in Virginia of shells in this formation, referred to the *Posidonia Kenperi*, a characteristic species of the European Trias, that the Connecticut sandstone belongs to the Upper New Red or Triassic system.

In the neighbourhood of Durham we learnt that a snow-storm, which occurred there in the first week of October, had seriously injured the woods, weighing down the boughs then in full leaf, and snapping off the leading shoots. For the first time in the United States I heard great concern expressed for the damage sustained by the timber, which is beginning to grow scarce in New England, where coal is dear.

The valley of the Connecticut presents a pleasing picture of a rural population, where there is neither poverty nor great wealth. I was told by well-informed persons, that if the land and stock of the farmers or small proprietors were sold off and invested in securities giving six per cent. interest, their average incomes would not exceed more than from 80*l.* to 120*l.* a year. An old gentleman who lately re-visited Durham, his native place, after an absence of twenty-five years, told me that in this interval the large families, the equal subdivision of the paternal estates among children, and the efforts made for the outfit of sons migrating to the West, had sensibly lowered the fortunes of the Connecticut yeomanry, so that they were reduced nearer to the condition of labourers than when he left them.

Pursuing my course southwards, I found that the snow-storm had been less heavy at New York, still less at Philadelphia, and after crossing the Susquehanna



(Dec. 13.) the weather began to resemble that of an English spring. In the suburbs of Baltimore, the locomotive engines being detached, our cars were drawn by horses on a railway into the middle of the town. Maryland was the first slave state we had visited; and at Baltimore we were reminded for the first time of the poorer inhabitants of a large European city by the mean dwellings and dress of some of the labouring class, both coloured and white.

At Washington I was shown the newly-founded national museum, in which the objects of natural history and other treasures collected during the late voyage of discovery to the Antarctic regions, the South Seas, and California, are deposited. Such a national repository would be invaluable at Philadelphia, New York, or Boston, but here there is no university, no classes of students in science or literature, no philosophical societies, no people who seem to have any leisure. The members of Congress rarely have town residences in this place, but, leaving their families in large cities, where they may enjoy more refined society, they live here in boarding-houses until their political duties and the session are over. If the most eminent legislators and statesmen, the lawyers of the supreme courts, and the foreign ambassadors, had all been assembled here for a great part of the year with their families, in a wealthy and flourishing metropolis, the social and political results of a great centre of influence and authority could not have failed to be most beneficial. Circumstances purely accidental, and not the intentional jealousy of the democracy, have checked the growth of the capital, and deprived it of the constitutional ascendancy which it might otherwise have exerted. Con-

gress  
ration  
of the  
disbar  
arrear  
the re  
bayon  
them  
and a  
ernme  
might  
that ca  
other c

Gen  
present  
the Atl  
Florida  
of a gr  
princip  
had spr  
estuary  
ascend  
take a  
mouth  
thirty m  
lieved t  
inhabita

We  
House  
tariſſ, a  
Means,  
After b



gress first assembled in Philadelphia, where the declaration of independence was signed ; but after the close of the revolutionary war in June, 1783, a party of the disbanded army marched to that city to demand their arrears of pay, and surrounded the building in which the representatives of the people were sitting, with fixed bayonets for about three hours. This alarm caused them to adjourn and meet at Princeton, New Jersey, and afterwards to seek some permanent seat of government. But for this untoward event, Philadelphia might have remained the federal metropolis, and in that case would certainly have lifted up her head above other cities in the New World—

*"Quantum lenta solent inter viburna cupressi."*

General Washington is said to have selected the present site of the capital as the most central spot on the Atlantic border, being midway between Maine and Florida, and being also at the head of the navigation of a great river. He had observed that all the other principal cities eastward of the Alleghany mountains had sprung up on similar sites ; but unfortunately the estuary of the Potomac is so long and winding, that to ascend from its mouth to Washington is said often to take a vessel as long as to cross from Liverpool to the mouth of the river. Had Annapolis, which is only thirty miles distant, been chosen as the capital, it is believed that it would, ere this, have contained 100,000 inhabitants.

We were present at an animated debate in the House of Representatives, on the proposed protective tariff, and a discussion in the senate on "Ways and Means," both carried on with great order and decorum. After being presented to the President, and visiting



several persons to whom we had letters, we were warned by a slight sprinkling of snow that it was time to depart and migrate further southwards. Crossing the Potomac, therefore, I proceeded to Richmond, in Virginia, where I resolved to sail down the James River, in order to examine the geology of the tertiary strata on its shores.

On entering the station-house of a railway which was to carry us to our place of embarkation, we found a room with only two chairs in it. One of these was occupied by a respectable-looking woman, who immediately rose, intending to give it up to me, an act betraying that she was English, and newly-arrived, as an American gentleman, even if already seated, would have felt it necessary to rise and offer the chair to any woman, whether mistress or maid, and she, as a matter of course, would have accepted the proffered seat. After I had gone out, she told my wife that she and her husband had come a few months before from Hertfordshire, hoping to get work in Virginia, but she had discovered that there was no room here for poor white people, who were despised by the very negroes if they laboured with their own hands. She had found herself looked down upon, even for carrying her own child, for they said she ought to hire a black nurse. These poor emigrants were now anxious to settle in some free state.

As another exemplification of the impediments to improvement existing here, I was told that a New England agriculturist had bought a farm on the south side of the James river, sold off all the slaves, and introduced Irish labourers, being persuaded that their services would prove more economical than slave-labour.

The  
third  
their  
the w  
surro  
selves  
south  
bonds

Mr

We  
try an  
a low  
pied p  
cretace  
in his  
racy on  
plain,  
the we  
tion of  
fig. 5.)  
most a  
rapids  
the Sc  
Washi  
the Sav  
At the  
and a g  
at this  
bounda  
tic regi  
and pol



The scheme was answering well, till, by the end of the third year, the Irish became very much dissatisfied with their position, feeling degraded by losing the respect of the whites, and being exposed to the contempt of the surrounding negroes. They had, in fact, lowered themselves by the habitual performance of offices which, south of the Potomac, are assigned to hereditary bondsmen.

#### MIOCENE TERTIARY STRATA OF VIRGINIA.

We have already seen that between the hilly country and the Atlantic there occurs in the United States, a low and nearly level region (A, B, fig. 5, p. 74.), occupied principally by beds of marl, clay, and sand of the cretaceous and tertiary formations. Maclure, in 1817, in his work on geology, laid down with no small accuracy on a coloured map the general limits of this great plain, and of the granitic district lying immediately to the westward. He also pointed out that at the junction of these great geological provinces (A, B, and B, C, fig. 5.), at the point *h*, as indicated in the section, almost all the great rivers descend suddenly by falls or rapids of moderate height, as the Delaware at Trenton, the Schuylkill near Philadelphia, the Potomac near Washington, the James river at Richmond, Virginia, the Savannah at Augusta in Georgia, and many others. At these points, therefore, the navigation is stopped, and a great many large cities have sprung up precisely at this limit, so that the line which marks the western boundary of the tertiary, and the eastern of the granitic region, is one of no small geological, geographical and political interest.



The general elevation of the great plain does not exceed a hundred feet, although sometimes considerably higher. Its width in the middle and southern states is very commonly from 100 to 150 miles. The tide, except in the more southern states, flows entirely across it, and the rivers intersecting it form large estuaries, which may have been due to the facility with which the incoherent materials of the cliffs were undermined and swept away, a process of waste which is still going on.

Throughout the greater part of the Atlantic plain, the cretaceous rocks, if present, are concealed by the overlying tertiary deposits, which consist chiefly of Miocene strata, extending from Delaware bay to the Cape Fear river, and occupying portions of Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, an area about 400 miles long from north to south, and varying in breadth from 10 to 70 miles. There are, besides, some patches of the Miocene formation in South Carolina and Georgia, where the Eocene or older tertiary deposits predominate almost exclusively.

I began my examination of these tertiary strata in the suburbs of Richmond, Virginia, where I saw in Shockoe creek some Eocene marls with characteristic shells, on which reposed Miocene red clay and sand. Between the two formations a remarkable bed of yellow siliceous clay intervenes, from twelve to twenty-five feet thick, marked on the surface by a band of meagre vegetation. This clay was found by Professor W. B. Rogers to be entirely composed of the siliceous cases of Infusoriæ, so minute as only to be detected by a powerful microscope, and yet exhibiting distinct spe-



cific characters, enabling us to refer them to the Miocene period.

Going down the James river about twenty miles below Richmond, I found, at a place called City Point, on the right bank, a cliff thirty feet high, in which yellow and white sands appear, with shells very analogous to those of the Suffolk crag, and referable to the same age; resting on Eocene marl and green earth. Several miles lower, at Evergreen, I collected abundance of shells in the upper or Miocene formation, with great numbers of an *Astarte*, resembling one of the commonest kinds of the Suffolk crag, and accompanied by the teeth of sharks, and bones of cetacea. Landing then at Coggin's Point, several miles farther eastward on the Virginian shore, I was conducted by Mr. Ruffin, son of the editor of the Farmer's Register, to a locality where shell-marl is procured and used for improving light soils, just as in Suffolk and on the Loire, strata of the same age, called *crag* and *falun*, have for centuries afforded a fertilizing mixture.

Here, and at Evergreen before mentioned, large flattened masses several feet wide, of a lamelliform coral resembling an *Astræa*, were lying on the beach, washed out of the Miocene marls. The species has been called by Mr. Lonsdale *Columnaria sexradiata*, and differs from the genus *Astræa*, as defined by Ehrenberg, in the stars not being subdivided.

All the planters in this part of Virginia, to whose houses I went without letters of introduction, received me most politely and hospitably. To be an Englishman engaged in scientific pursuits was a sufficient passport, and their servants, horses, and carriages, were most liberally placed at my disposal.



I then crossed to the north side of the James river, being rowed out at sunrise far from the shore to wait for a steamer. The hour of her arrival being somewhat uncertain, we remained for some time in the cold, muffled up in our cloaks, in a small boat moored to a single wooden pile driven into a shoal, with three negroes for our companions. The situation was desolate in the extreme, both the banks of the broad estuary appearing low and distant, and as wild and uninhabited as when first discovered in 1607, by Captain Smith, before he was taken prisoner, and his life saved by the Indian maiden Pocahontas. At length we gladly hailed the large steamer as she came down rapidly towards us, and my luggage was immediately taken charge of by two of the sable crew, who called themselves Lord Wellington and Julius Cæsar.

We disembarked in a few hours near the old deserted village of Jamestown, at the Grove Landing, seven miles south of Williamsburg. Here I found the beach strewn over with innumerable fossil shells, washed out of the sandy Miocene marls of a cliff forty feet high. Some large varieties of the genus *Pecten* were most abundant, closely packed together in a dense bed, above which was another layer composed almost wholly of the shells of a *Chama* (*C. congregata*), both valves being united in each individual. From the same cliff I also procured shells of the genera *Conus*, *Oliva*, *Marginella*, *Fusus*, *Pyrula*, *Murex*, *Natica*, and others.

We then visited Williamsburg, where there is a University founded by William and Mary, and therefore very ancient for this country. In the neighbourhood I procured a rich harvest of fossil shells, collecting in one



morning with my own hands no less than seventy distinct species, besides several corals, in a pit at Burwell's Mill. Upon the whole, I procured 147 species of shells, exclusive of Balani and corals, from this formation in the United States, and chiefly during the present expedition and near the banks of the James river.

That they belong to the same age as the Miocene deposits of Europe may be inferred:—first, from their position, as they overlie the Eocene marls containing shells, resembling those of the London and Paris basins:—secondly, from the close affinity of many of the most abundant species to fossils of the crag of Suffolk and the French faluns:—thirdly, from the proportion of the fossil shells, identical in species with mollusca, now inhabiting the American coast, the proportion being about one sixth of the whole, or about seventeen per cent., in those compared by me, for I have been able to identify 23 out of 147 with living shells. This relation of the fossil and recent fauna had already led Mr. Conrad and the Professors Rogers to the same conclusions, and they had correctly called these deposits Miocene. Fourthly, the corals, of which I obtained thirteen species, agree all generically with those of the Miocene beds of Europe, and some specifically, as a *lunulite*, the same as one from the Suffolk crag, and *Anthophyllum breve*, common in the faluns of Tournaine. Fifthly, the cetacea also agree generically, and the fish in many cases specifically, with European Miocene fossils, and no remains of reptiles have been found on either side of the Atlantic in this formation.

When we consider how remarkably the *species* of the Suffolk crag differ from the shells of the contemporaneous faluns of the Loire, the geologist will not be



surprised to learn that I have only met with nine American Miocene shells, agreeing with fossils of the same period in Europe. It is also worthy of notice that the shells identified with recent species agree with testacea, now living on the western side of the Atlantic, some of which, as some kinds of *Fulgur*, a subgenus of *Pyrula*, and *Gnathodon*, an estuary shell, are forms peculiar to America. In like manner, the fossil shells found in the Miocene strata of Europe, which agree with recent kinds, belong to species inhabiting the British seas, the Mediterranean, or the African coast of the Atlantic. Hence it follows that at the remote period called Miocene, the seas were not only divided as now into distinct geographical provinces, but already that peculiar distribution of the living mollusca which now exists had begun to prevail. This conclusion is remarkable when we recollect that at the geological era alluded to, the fauna was so distinct from the present, that four fifths of the species now living had not yet come into existence.

In regard to the climate of the Miocene period it is not uninteresting to observe that the fossil shells of Maryland and Virginia resemble those of Touraine and Bourdeaux more nearly than the fossils of Suffolk. This might have been expected from the nearer correspondence in latitude; and it is the presence of such genera as *Conus*, *Oliva*, *Marginella*, and *Crassatella* (represented by large species), forms belonging to warmer seas, which assimilate the American and French deposits, and contrast both of them with the English, where no representatives of these genera are met with. Nevertheless, it is singular that there should be so much resemblance between the Miocene shells of



the Loire and Gironde and those of the James river and other estuaries in the United States which lie ten degrees of latitude farther south than the French faluns, the latter being in the 47th, while the American strata of the same age are in the 37th of north latitude. This circumstance may probably be accounted for by curves in the isothermal lines similar in their prolongation east and west, to those now existing as pointed out by Humboldt, in his essay on Climate.



## CHAPTER VII.

*Pine Barrens of Virginia and North Carolina.—Railway Train stopped by Snow and Ice.—The Great Dismal Swamp.—Soil formed entirely of Vegetable Matter.—Rises higher than the contiguous firm Land.—Buried Timber.—Lake in the Middle.—The Origin of Coal illustrated by the Great Dismal.—Objections to the Theory of an ancient Atmosphere highly charged with Carbonic Acid.*

Dec. 23. 1841.—From Williamsburg we went to Norfolk in Virginia, passing down the James river in a steamer, and from Norfolk by railway to Weldon in North Carolina, passing for eighty miles through a low level country, covered with fir trees, and called the Pine Barrens. On our way we were overtaken by rain, which turned to sleet, and in the evening formed a coating of ice on the rails, so that the wheels of the engine could take no hold. There was a good stove and plenty of fuel in the car, but no food. After a short pause, the engineer backed the locomotive for half a mile over that part of the rail from which the snow and ice had just been brushed and scraped away by the passage of the train; then, returning rapidly, he gained sufficient momentum to carry us on two or three miles farther, and, by several repetitions of this manœuvre, he brought us, about nightfall, to a small watering station, where there was no inn, but a two-storied cottage not far off.

Here we were made welcome, and as we had previously dropped by the way all our passengers except two, were furnished with a small room to ourselves, and a

clean  
fire, and  
the w  
unpla  
made  
we a  
Barre

Our  
count  
seats  
to the  
with  
when  
the ca  
the la  
where  
so esse  
at sea  
the ca  
luxury  
require  
could  
reimpo

The  
pines f  
and fo  
running  
Atlant  
follow  
rived f  
there a  
they c  
where



clean comfortable bed. We soon made a blazing wood-fire, and defied the cold, although we could see plainly the white snow on the ground through openings in the unplastered laths of which the wall of the house was made. Before morning all the snow was melted, and we again proceeded on our way through the Pine Barrens.

Our car, according to the usual construction in this country, was in the shape of a long omnibus, with the seats transverse, and a passage down the middle, where, to the great relief of the traveller, he can stand upright with his hat on, and walk about, warming himself when he pleases at the stove, which is in the centre of the car. There is often a private room fitted up for the ladies, into which no gentleman can intrude, and where they are sometimes supplied with rocking-chairs, so essential to the comfort of the Americans, whether at sea or on land, in a fashionable drawing-room or in the cabin of a ship. It is singular enough that this luxury, after being popular for ages all over Lancashire, required transplantation to the New World before it could be improved and become fashionable, so as to be reimported into its native land.

The Pine Barrens, on which the long-leaved or pitch pines flourish, have for the most part a siliceous soil, and form a broad belt many hundred miles in length, running parallel to the coast, in the region called the Atlantic Plain, before alluded to. The sands, as we follow this region from New Jersey to Georgia, are derived from strata of more than one tertiary period, and there are interstratified beds of clay, which, whenever they come to the surface in valleys, cause swamps, where peculiar kinds of evergreen oaks, the cypress or



cedar, tall canes, and other plants abound. Many climbers, called here wild vines, encircle the trunks of the trees, and on the banks of the Roanoke, near Weldon, I saw numerous mistletoes with their white berries. The Pine Barrens retain much of their verdure in winter, and were interesting to me from the uniformity and monotony of their general aspect, for they constitute, from their vast extent, one of the marked features in the geography of the globe, like the Pampas of South America.

There are many swamps or morasses in this low flat region, and one of the largest of these occurs between the towns of Norfolk and Weldon. We traversed several miles of its northern extremity on the railway, which is supported on piles. It bears the appropriate and very expressive name of the "Great Dismal," and is no less than forty miles in length from north to south, and twenty-five miles in its greatest width from east to west, the northern half being situated in Virginia, the southern in North Carolina. I observed that the water was obviously in motion in several places, and the morass has somewhat the appearance of a broad inundated river-plain, covered with all kinds of aquatic trees and shrubs, the soil being as black as in a peat-bog. The accumulation of vegetable matter going on here in a hot climate, over so vast an area, is a subject of such high geological interest, that I shall relate what I learnt of this singular morass. The best account yet published of it is given by Mr. Edmund Ruffin, the able editor of the *Farmer's Register* (see vol iv., No. 9. January 7. 1837).

It is one enormous quagmire, soft and muddy, except where the surface is rendered partially firm by a cover-

ing  
to s  
roun  
the  
mak  
char  
marg  
T  
on t  
twel  
eleva  
and  
and  
feren  
rate  
than  
confir  
the r  
canal  
sake  
traver  
when  
is six  
groun  
whole  
twelv  
stream  
been  
over t  
inund  
Some  
in the  
low is



ing of vegetables and their matted roots ; yet, strange to say, instead of being lower than the level of the surrounding country, it is actually higher than nearly all the firm and dry land which encompasses it, and, to make the anomaly complete, in spite of its semi-fluid character, it is higher in the interior than towards its margin.

The only exceptions to both these statements is found on the western side, where, for the distance of about twelve or fifteen miles, the streams flow from slightly elevated but higher land, and supply all its abundant and overflowing water. Towards the north, the east, and the south, the waters flow from the swamp to different rivers, which give abundant evidence, by the rate of their descent, that the Great Dismal is higher than the surrounding firm ground. This fact is also confirmed by the measurements made in levelling for the railway from Portsmouth to Suffolk, and for two canals cut through different parts of the morass, for the sake of obtaining timber. The railway itself, when traversing the Great Dismal, is literally higher than when on the land some miles distant on either side, and is six to seven feet higher than where it passes over dry ground, near to Suffolk and Portsmouth. Upon the whole, the centre of the morass seems to lie more than twelve feet above the flat country round it. If the streams which now flow in from the west, had for ages been bringing down black fluid mire, instead of water, over the firm subsoil, we might suppose the ground so inundated to have acquired its present configuration. Some small ridges, however, of land must have existed in the original plain or basin, for these now rise like low islands in various places above the general surface.



But the streams to the westward do not bring down liquid mire, and are not charged with any sediment. The soil of the swamp is formed of vegetable matter, usually without any admixture of earthy particles. We have here, in fact, a deposit of peat from ten to fifteen feet in thickness, in a latitude where, owing to the heat of the sun, and length of the summer, no peat mosses like those of Europe would be looked for under ordinary circumstances.

In countries like Scotland and Ireland, where the climate is damp, and the summer short and cool, the natural vegetation of one year does not rot away during the next in moist situations. If water flows into such land, it is absorbed, and promotes the vigorous growth of mosses and other aquatic plants, and when they die, the same water arrests their putrefaction. But as a general rule, no such accumulation of peat can take place in a country like that of Virginia, where the summer's heat causes annually as large a quantity of dead plants to decay as is equal in amount to the vegetable matter produced in one year.

It has been already stated that there are many trees and shrubs in the region of the Pine Barrens (and the same may be said of the United States generally), which, like our willows, flourish luxuriantly in water. The juniper trees, or white cedar (*Cupressus thyoides*), stand firmly in the softest part of the quagmire, supported by their long tap-roots, and afford, with many other evergreens, a dark shade, under which a multitude of ferns, reeds, and shrubs, from nine to eighteen feet high, and a thick carpet of mosses, four or five inches high, spring up and are protected from the rays of the sun. When these are most



powerful, the large cedar (*Cupressus disticha*) and many other deciduous trees are in full leaf. The black soil formed beneath this shade, to which the mosses and the leaves make annual additions, does not perfectly resemble the peat of Europe, most of the plants being so decayed as to leave little more than soft black mud, without any traces of organization. This loose soil is called sponge by the labourers; and it has been ascertained that, when exposed to the sun, and thrown out on the bank of a canal, where clearings have been made, it rots entirely away. Hence it is evident that it owes its preservation in the swamp to moisture and the shade of the dense foliage. The evaporation continually going on in the wet spongy soil during summer cools the air, and generates a temperature resembling that of a more northern climate, or a region more elevated above the level of the sea.

Numerous trunks of large and tall trees lie buried in the black mire of the morass. In so loose a soil they are easily overthrown by winds, and nearly as many have been found lying beneath the surface of the peaty soil, as standing erect upon it. When thrown down, they are soon covered by water, and keeping wet they never decompose, except the sap wood, which is less than an inch thick. Much of the timber is obtained by sounding a foot or two below the surface, and it is sawn into planks while half under water.

The Great Dismal has been described as being highest towards its centre. Here, however, there is an extensive lake of an oval form, seven miles long, and more than five wide, the depth, where greatest, fifteen feet; and its bottom, consisting of mud like the swamp, but sometimes with a pure white sand, a foot deep, cov-



ering the mud. The water is transparent, though tinged of a pale brown-colour, like that of our peat-mosses, and contains abundance of fish. This sheet of water is usually even with its banks, on which a thick and tall forest grows. There is no beach, for the bank sinks perpendicularly, so that if the waters are lowered several feet it makes no alteration in the breadth of the lake.

Much timber has been cut down and carried out from the swamp by means of canals, which are perfectly straight for long distances, with the trees on each side arching over and almost joining their branches across, so that they throw a dark shade on the water, which of itself looks black, being coloured as before mentioned. When the boats emerge from the gloom of these avenues into the lake, the scene is said to be "as beautiful as fairy land."

The bears inhabiting the swamp climb trees in search of acorns and gum berries, breaking off large boughs of the oaks in order to draw the acorns near to them. These same bears are said to kill hogs and even cows. There are also wild cats, and occasionally a solitary wolf, in the morass.

That the ancient seams of coal were produced for the most part by terrestrial plants of all sizes, not drifted, but growing on the spot, is a theory more and more generally adopted in modern times, and the growth of what is called sponge in such a swamp, and in such a climate as the Great Dismal, already covering so many square miles of a low level region bordering the sea, and capable of spreading itself indefinitely over the adjacent country, helps us greatly to conceive the manner in which the coal of the ancient Carboniferous



ocks may have been formed. The heat, perhaps, may not have been excessive when the coal-measures originated, but the entire absence of frost, with a warm and damp atmosphere, may have enabled tropical forms to flourish in latitudes far distant from the line. Huge swamps in a rainy climate, standing above the level of the surrounding firm land, and supporting a dense forest, may have spread far and wide, invading the plains, like some European peat-mosses when they burst; and the frequent submergence of these masses of vegetable matter beneath seas or estuaries, as often as the land sunk down during subterranean movements, may have given rise to the deposition of strata of mud, sand, or limestone, immediately upon the vegetable matter. The conversion of successive surfaces into dry land, where other swamps supporting trees may have formed, might give origin to a continued series of coal-measures of great thickness. In some kinds of coal, the vegetable texture is apparent throughout under the microscope; in others, it has only partially disappeared; but even in this coal the flattened trunks of trees of the genera *Lepidodendron*, *Sigillaria*, and others, converted into pure coal, are occasionally met with, and erect fossil trees are observed in the overlying strata, terminating downwards in seams of coal. The chemical processes by which vegetable matter buried in the earth is gradually turned into coal and anthracite has been already explained (see above, p. 72.).

Before concluding the remarks which are naturally suggested by a visit to the Great Dismal, I shall say a few words on a popular doctrine, favoured by some geologists, respecting an atmosphere highly charged with



carbonic acid, in which the coal plants are supposed to have flourished. Some imagine the air to have been so full of choke-damp during the ancient era alluded to, that it was unfitted for the respiration of warm-blooded quadrupeds and birds, or even reptiles, which require a more rapid oxygenation of their blood than creatures lower in the scale of organization, such as have alone been met with hitherto in the Carboniferous and older strata. It is assumed that an excess of oxygen was set free when the plants which elaborated the coal subtracted many hundred million tons of carbon from the carbonic acid gas which previously loaded the air. All this carbon was then permanently locked up in solid seams of coal, and the chemical composition of the earth's atmosphere essentially altered.

But they who reason thus are bound to inform us what may have been the duration of the period in the course of which so much carbon was secreted by the powers of vegetable life, and, secondly, what accession of fresh carbonic acid did the air receive in the same. We know that in the present state of the globe, the air is continually supplied with carbonic acid from several sources, of which the three principal are, first, the daily putrefaction of dead animal and vegetable substances; secondly, the disintegration of rocks charged with carbonic acid and organic matter; and, thirdly, the copious evolution of this gas from mineral springs and the earth, especially in volcanic countries. By that law which causes two gases of different specific gravity, when brought into contact, to become uniformly diffused and mutually absorbed through the whole space which they occupy, the heavy carbonic acid finds its way upwards through all parts of the at-

mo.  
given  
bubb  
mosse  
suar  
ents  
the at  
grow  
other  
of ma  
carbon

Cor  
—spr  
acid a  
when  
been g  
in the  
brough  
measur  
geologi  
carbon  
those c  
admitt  
a defici  
or peat  
epochs.  
urious  
ing the  
tions of  
the ave  
—a sta  
med by



moſphere, and the ſolid materials of large forests are given out from the earth in an inviſible form, or in bubbles riſing through the water of ſprings. Peat-moſſes of no ſlight depth, and covering thouſands of ſquare miles, are thus fed with their mineral conſtituents without materially deranging the conſtituents of the atmosphere breathed by man. Thouſands of trees grow up, float down to the delta of the Miſſiſſippi, and other rivers, and are buried, and yet the air, at the end of many centuries, may be as much impregnated with carbonic acid as before.

Coral reefs are year after year growing in the ocean—ſprings and rivers feed the ſame ocean with carbonic acid and lime; but we have no reaſon to infer that when mountain maſſes of calcareous rock have thus been gradually formed in the ſea, any eſſential change in the chemical compoſition of its waters has been brought about. We have no accurate data as yet for meaſuring whether in our own time, or at any remote geological era, the relative ſupply and conſumption of carbon in the air or the ocean cauſes the amount of thoſe elements to vary greatly; but the variation, if admitted, would not have cauſed an exceſs, but rather a deficit of carbon in the periods moſt productive of coal or peat, as compared to any ſubſequent or antecedent epochs. In fact, a climate favouring the rank and luxurious growth of plants, and at the ſame time checking their decay, and giving riſe to peat or accumulations of vegetable matter, might, for the time, diminish the average amount of carbonic acid in the atmosphere—a ſtate of things preciſely the reverse of that aſſumed by thoſe to whoſe views I am now objecting.



## CHAPTER VIII.

*Tour to Charleston, South Carolina.—Facilities of Locomotion.—Augusta.—Voyage down the Savannah River.—Shell Bluff.—Slave-labour.—Fever and Ague.—Millhaven.—Pine Forests of Georgia.—Alligators and Land-Tortoises.—Warmth of Climate in January.—Tertiary Strata on the Savannah.—Fossil Remains of Mastodon and Mylodon near Savannah.—Passports required of Slaves.—Cheerfulness of the Negroes.*

*Dec. 28.*—CHARLESTON, South Carolina. We arrived here after a journey of 160 miles through the pine forests of North Carolina, between Weldon and Wilmington, and a voyage of about 17 hours, in a steam ship, chiefly in the night between Wilmington and this place. Here we find ourselves in a genial climate, where the snow is rarely seen, and never lies above an hour or two upon the ground. The rose, the narcissus, and other flowers, are still lingering in the gardens, the woods still verdant with the magnolia, live oak, and long-leaved pine, while the dwarf fan palm or palmetto, frequent among the underwood, marks a more southern region. In less than four weeks since we left Boston, we have passed from the 43d to the 33d degree of latitude, carried often by the power of steam for several hundred miles together through thinly peopled wildernesses, yet sleeping every night at good inns, and contrasting the facilities of locomotion in this new country with the difficulties we had contended with the year before when travelling in Europe, through populous parts of Touraine, Brittany, and other provinces of France.



At Charleston I made acquaintance with several persons zealously engaged in the study of natural history, and then went by an excellent railway 136 miles through the endless pine woods to Augusta, in Georgia. This journey, which would formerly have taken a week, was accomplished between sunrise and sunset; and, as we scarcely saw by the way any town or village, or even a clearing, nor any human habitation except the station houses, the spirit of enterprise displayed in such public works filled me with astonishment which increased the farther I went South. Starting from the sea-side, and imagining that we had been on a level the whole way, we were surprised to find in the evening, on reaching the village of Aikin, sixteen miles from Augusta, that we were on a height several hundred feet above the sea, and that we had to descend a steep inclined plane to the valley of the Savannah river. The strata cut through here in making the railway consist of vermilion-coloured earth and clay, and white quartzose sand, with masses of pure white kaolin intermixed. These strata belong to the older or Eocene tertiary formation, which joins the clay-slate and granitic region a few miles above Augusta, where I visited the rapids of the Savannah.

I had been warned by my scientific friends in the North, that the hospitality of the planters might greatly interfere with my schemes of geologizing in the Southern states. In the letters, therefore, of introduction furnished to me at Washington, it was particularly requested that information respecting my objects, and facilities of moving speedily from place to place, should be given me, instead of dinners and society. These injunctions were every where kindly and politely com-



plied with. It was my intention, for the sake of getting a correct notion of the low country between the granitic region and the Atlantic, to examine the cliffs bounding the Savannah river from its rapids to near its mouth, a distance, including its windings, of about 250 miles. After passing a few days at Augusta, where, for the first time, I saw cotton growing in the fields, I embarked in a steam-boat employed in the cotton trade, and went for forty miles down the great river, which usually flows in a broad alluvial plain, with an average fall of about one foot per mile, or 250 feet between Augusta and the sea. Like the Mississippi and all large rivers, which, in the flood season, are densely charged with sediment, the Savannah has its immediate banks higher than the plain intervening between them and the high grounds beyond, which usually, however distant from the river, present a steep cliff or "bluff" towards it. The low flat alluvial plain, overflowed in great part at this rainy season, is covered with aquatic trees, and an ornamental growth of tall canes, some of them reaching a height of twenty feet, being from one to two inches in diameter, and with their leaves still green. The lofty cedar (*Cupressus disticha*), now leafless, towers above them, and is remarkable for the angular bends of the top boughs, and the large thick roots which swell out near the base.

I landed first at a cliff about 120 feet high, called Shell Bluff, from the large fossil oysters which are conspicuous there. About forty miles below Augusta, at Demery's Ferry, the place where we disembarked, the waters were so high that we were carried on shore by two stout negroes. In the absence of the proprietor to whom I had letters, we were hospitably received by his

overs  
led h  
condu  
dure  
the m  
lieve  
month  
We c  
reach  
room,  
on the  
and n  
Ret  
dusk c  
prised  
the fa  
Over  
wards  
men, in  
over th  
The re  
and I  
of the  
moving  
chair,  
cloak, a  
watch  
dren, a  
head fo  
ing of t  
this bei  
I left t  
sacrifice



overseer, who came down to the river bank, with two led horses, on one of which was a lady's saddle. He conducted us through a beautiful wood, where the verdure of the evergreen oaks, the pines, and hollies, and the mildness of the air, made it difficult for us to believe that it was mid-winter, and that we had been the month before in a region of snow storms and sledges. We crossed two creeks, and after riding several miles reached the house, and were shown into a spacious room, where a great wood fire was kept up constantly on the hearth, and the doors on both sides left open day and night.

Returning home to this hospitable mansion in the dusk of the evening of the day following, I was surprised to see, in a grove of trees near the court-yard of the farm, a large wood-fire blazing on the ground. Over the fire hung three cauldrons, filled, as I afterwards learned, with hog's lard, and three old negro women, in their usual drab-coloured costume, were leaning over the cauldrons, and stirring the lard to clarify it. The red glare of the fire was reflected from their faces, and I need hardly say how much they reminded me of the scene of the witches in *Macbeth*. Beside them, moving slowly backwards and forwards in a rocking-chair, sat the wife of the overseer, muffled up in a cloak, and suffering from a severe cold, but obliged to watch the old slaves, who are as thoughtless as children, and might spoil the lard if she turned away her head for a few minutes. When I inquired the meaning of this ceremony, I was told it was "killing time," this being the coldest season of the year, and that since I left the farm in the morning thirty hogs had been sacrificed by the side of a running stream not far off.



These were destined to serve as winter provisions for the negroes, of whom there were about a hundred on this plantation. To supply all of them with food, clothes, and medical attendants, young, old, and impotent, as well as the able-bodied, is but a portion of the expense of slave-labour. They must be continually superintended by trustworthy whites, who might often perform no small part of the task, and far more effectively, with their own hands.

I fossilized for three days very diligently at Shell Bluff, obtaining more than forty species of shells, chiefly casts, referable to the Eocene formation; of which I shall speak by-and-by.

Resuming our voyage, thirty miles further down the river, in another large cotton steam-boat, we were landed at Stony Bluff, in Georgia, where I wished to examine the rocks of burr-stone. There was no living being or habitation in sight. The large steamer vanished in an instant, sweeping down the swollen river at the rate of seventeen miles an hour, and it seemed as if we had been dropped down from a balloon, with our luggage, in the midst of a wilderness. I began by exercising my hammer on the burr-stone of this low bluff; a cellular kind of flint, sometimes used for millstones, and full of silicified corals and minute shells, and, as I afterwards found, by aid of a powerful microscope, of sponges. It is an Eocene formation, and alternates with beds of red loam. After making a collection of specimens, I walked about the wood, and found a lone house, at the door of which a woman was sitting, in a languid state of health. She said she had just recovered from the fever, or chill; and among other inquiries, asked when we had last had this complaint. On

being  
to liv  
not o  
It is  
ern s  
unive  
South  
best s  
and S  
Decem

I w  
house,  
of Col  
me hi  
send i  
way f  
could  
were n  
tall pi  
sary to  
tunate  
My ne  
Southe  
of this  
and g  
neighb  
ologist.

We  
woods,  
from g  
leaved  
that of  
finely l



being told we had never had it, she said, "I should like to live in your country, for among the Whites there is not one in this section of Georgia that has escaped." It is true, that consumption, so common in the Northern states, and so often fatal, is unknown here; but the universality of the ague makes these low districts in the Southern states most unenviable dwelling-places. The best season for a geological tour in this part of Georgia and South Carolina, east of the mountains, is from December to April inclusive.

I waited for the return of the owner of the lone house, and told him I wished to visit the plantation of Colonel Jones, at Millhaven. He consented to let me hire his barouche with one horse, telling me I must send it back the best way I could, after finding my own way for twelve miles through the pine forests, as he could spare me no driver. The lanes through the wood were numerous, and a storm had blown down so many tall pines across the road, each of which it was necessary to circumnavigate, that we thought ourselves fortunate when we arrived safe at the destined haven. My new host added to the kindness and frankness of a Southern planter, what I had little expected in the midst of this forest, a strong love for my favourite pursuits, and guided me at once to Jacksonborough, and other neighbouring places, best worthy the attention of a geologist.

We had many long rides together through those woods, there being no underwood to prevent a horse from galloping freely in every direction. The long-leaved pines emit a faint odour somewhat resembling that of the hyacinth, and their bright-green foliage was finely brought out against the clear blue sky. The air



was balmy, and unusually warm, even for Georgia in the first week of January. We saw several butterflies, one of a bright yellow colour, and bats flying about in the evening. The croaking of the frog and the chirping of the cricket were again heard. They had been silent a few days before, when the air was cooler. The sheep, which remain out in these woods all the winter, are now followed by lambs about three weeks old. I saw many black squirrels here, but only heard of the opossum, racoon, bear, and alligator, without seeing any. A few days ago, an alligator was shot fourteen feet long, in the act of carrying off a pig; and the sportsmen complain to me that they devour their dogs when they follow the deer, which, on the first alarm, usually take to the Savannah river.

I frequently observed the holes of the gopher, a kind of land-tortoise, which burrows in the sand, and is now hybernating below ground. Four or five inhabit one hole; their eggs are rather smaller than a hen's. They are gregarious, and in summer are seen feeding ten or twelve together on the low shrubs. They are said to be very strong for their size, and a negro-woman assured a lady of our party that she was so light that she might be "toted by a gopher." We also saw small hillocks, such as are thrown up by our moles, made by a very singular animal, which they call a salamander, because, I believe, it is often seen to appear when the woods are burnt. It is not a reptile, but a species of rat (*Pseudostoma pinetorum*), with pouches on its cheeks.

On quitting Millhaven, instead of continuing my voyage down the river, I hired a carriage to convey us to the town of Savannah, a distance of nearly one hun-

dred  
high  
red-  
At  
cenc  
liob  
the  
buzz  
we c  
soari  
prise  
from  
journ  
large  
other

No  
cause  
mile  
disti  
long  
given  
Some  
fragr

W  
ed of  
Augu  
inns  
come  
ther.  
fortab  
treate  
sion o  
belon



dred miles. Here and there I went down from the high road to examine the river-cliffs, consisting of bright red-coloured loam, red and grey clay, and white sand. At Hudson's Reach and other points I found Eocene shells and fishes' teeth, chiefly of the genera *Myliobates* and *Lamna*. One day, on returning from the river, I came suddenly in the wood on some turkey-buzzards feeding on a dead hog. I had often seen since we crossed the Potomac these large black and grey birds soaring at a great height in the air, but I was now surprised to see one of them perch on a stump a few yards from me, and seem perfectly fearless. In our last day's journey, I remarked, for the first time in America, a large flight of rooks, some wheeling about in the air, others perched on trees.

Near the village of Ebenezer we passed over a long causeway, made of logs, which for three quarters of a mile was under water. The tall cedars (*Cupressus disticha*), and other trees arching over and forming a long aisle, reminded me exactly of the descriptions given of the canals in the Great Dismal Swamp. Some of the myrtles in these wet grounds are very fragrant.

We were pursuing a line of road not much frequented of late, since the establishment of the railway from Augusta to Charleston. Our arrival, therefore, at the inns was usually a surprise, and instead of being welcomed, we were invariably recommended to go on farther. When once admitted, we were made very comfortable, having our meals with the family, and being treated more like guests than customers. On one occasion our driver, to whose brother our carriage and horses belonged, fell in with the son of a neighbouring planter



who reproached him in a friendly manner for not having come to his house the night before, and brought us with him. The social equality which prevails here arises not so much from the spirit of a republican government, as from the fact of the whites constituting an aristocracy for whom the negroes work. Had we availed ourselves of letters of introduction freely offered to us, we might have passed from the house of one hospitable planter to another, and heard as little of reckonings at inns as Don Quixote expected, after his study of the histories of knights errant.

*Jan. 10. 1842.*—On the tenth day after leaving Augusta, we arrived at Savannah, from which town I immediately set out on an excursion through a flat, swampy country, resembling a large delta, to Beaulieu and the Vernon river, about fifteen miles to the south-east. I went by Heyner's Bridge, on the White Bluff creek, to see a spot about twelve miles from Savannah, where I had learnt from Dr. Habersham that bones of the mastodon and other extinct mammalia had been discovered. The bed of clay, about six feet thick, containing them, can only be seen at low water, and I descended to it in a boat when the tide was out; and by the aid of the negroes, obtained the grinder of the common American mastodon. The stratum enclosing these and other bones rests immediately on sand containing marine shells of living species, and is covered by the mud of a freshwater swamp, in which trees grow, and when thrown down by the winds, become occasionally imbedded. One of the teeth given to me from this place by Dr. Habersham was ascertained, by Mr. Owen, to be referable to his new genus, *Mylodon*. Mr. Hamilton Couper afterwards sent me from a similar



geological position, farther south in Georgia, near the mouth of the Altamaha, the tooth of a megatherium. It is evident, from his observations and my own, that at a comparatively recent period since the Atlantic was inhabited by the existing species of marine testacea, there was an upheaval and laying dry of the bed of the ocean in this region. The new land supported forests in which the megatherium, mylodon, mastodon, elephant, a species of horse different from the common one, and other quadrupeds, lived, and were occasionally buried in the swamps. There have also been subsidences on the coast, and perhaps, far inland; for in many places near the sea there are signs of the forest having become submerged, the remains of erect trees being seen enveloped in stratified mud and sand: I even suspect that this coast is now sinking down, at a slow and insensible rate, for the sea is encroaching and gaining at many points on the freshwater marshes. Thus at Beaulieu I found upright stumps of trees of the pine, cedar, and ilex covered with live oysters and barnacles, and exposed at low tide; the deposit in which they were buried having been recently washed away from around them by the waves. I also observed, that the flat country of marshes was bounded on its western or inland side by a steep bank or ancient cliff cut in the sandy tertiary strata, and there are other inland cliffs of the same kind at different heights implying the successive elevation above the sea of the whole tertiary region.

Not only in South Carolina and Georgia, but also in the low region of North Carolina, as, for example, fifteen miles below Newbern, the remains of extinct quadrupeds have been met with. The tooth of a



horse found in the latter place, with the bones of mastodon, elephant, and other mammalia, was presented to me by Mr. Conrad, remarkably curved, and agreeing, in this respect, with a fossil tooth discovered by Mr. Darwin on the north side of the Plata, in Entre Rios, in South America, where it accompanied the mastodon and megatherium. As no species of equus existed in the New World when it was discovered in the fifteenth century, naturalists were inclined, at first, to be incredulous in regard to the real antiquity of this fossil; but as the tooth is more curved than in the recent horse, ass, or zebra, the fossil species may have differed as widely from any living representative of this genus, as the zebra or wild ass from the horse of Arabia.

It is a fact well worthy of attention that in the southern states of the Union so many extinct quadrupeds, such as the mastodon, elephant, megatherium, mylodon, and horse, should occur, agreeing, some specifically and others in generic characters, with those found in corresponding latitudes in South America near the river Plata, and in Patagonia, or between latitudes  $31^{\circ}$  and  $50^{\circ}$  S., and that in both hemispheres they should be accompanied by marine fossil shells of *recent* species, as Mr. Darwin has shown to be the case in the Pampas. Yet, although these quadrupeds are so modern, geologically speaking, as to have co-existed with the present testaceous fauna, we cannot attribute their extermination to the agency of man; for it is not the huge beasts alone, but quadrupeds as small as the rat, which have become extinct in South America within the same period, as Mr. Lund, the Danish naturalist, has shown in reference to Brazil.

On the beach at Beauly I saw numerous foot-tracks

CHAP.  
of r  
mad  
since  
were  
cess  
steps  
I re  
trace  
these  
that s  
and h  
tide c  
Th  
ed wi  
stones  
for the  
thousa  
they c  
compa  
the sid  
inches  
sidewa  
larger  
make  
and th  
face.

A pl  
see a fl  
the int  
They, a  
expecti  
bolder t  
small f



of racoons and opossums on the sand, which had been made during the four hours immediately preceding, or since the ebbing of the tide. Already some of them were half filled with fine blown sand, showing the process by which distinct casts may be formed of the footsteps of animals in a stratum of quartzose sandstone. I remarked that the tracks of the racoons could be traced at several points to beds of oysters, on which these animals are said to feed. The negroes told me, that sometimes a large oyster closes his shell suddenly, and holds the racoon fast by his paw till the returning tide comes up and drowns him.

The surface of the beach for half a mile was covered with small round pellets of mud as thick as hail-stones, of the size of currants and peas, and arranged for the most part in small heaps. These are made by thousands of land crabs (*Gelasimus vocans* ?), which they call fiddlers, because the motion of their claws is compared to the arm of a player on the violin. By the side of each heap was a perpendicular hole several inches deep, into which when alarmed the crab retreats sideways, sometimes disappearing, but often leaving the larger claw projecting above for want of room. They make these holes by rolling the wet sand into pellets, and then bringing up each ball separately to the surface.

A planter of this country told me it was amusing to see a flock of turkies driven down for the first time from the interior to feed on the crabs in the marine marshes. They, at first, walk about in a ludicrous state of alarm, expecting their toes to be pinched, but after a time, one bolder than the rest is tempted by hunger to snap up a small fiddler, after which the rest fall to and devour



them by thousands. On my way through the woods in this low region near Savannah, I saw some fine magnolias ninety feet high, palmettos six feet high in tufts, and oaks hung with white pendant wreaths, sometimes ten feet long, of the wiry parasitic *Tillandsia usnæoides*. This climber, which also festoons the woods in South America, much resembles the lichen called in England "old man's beard," but is a phenogamous plant.

In order to see the bed of clay containing the bones of the mastodon at Heyner's Bridge, it was necessary for me to be on the ground by daybreak at low tide. With this view, I left Savannah in the middle of the night. The owner of the property kindly lent me his black servant as a guide, and I found him provided with a passport, without which no slave can go out after dusk. The exact streets through which he was to pass in his way to me were prescribed, and had he strayed from this route he might have been committed to the guard-house. These and other precautionary regulations, equally irksome to the slaves and their masters, are said to have become necessary after an insurrection brought on by abolitionist missionaries, who are spoken of here in precisely the same tone as incendiaries, or beasts of prey whom it would be meritorious to shoot or hang. In this savage and determined spirit I heard some planters speak who were mild in their manners, and evidently indulgent to their slaves. Nearly half the entire population of this state are of the coloured race, who are said to be as excitable as they are ignorant. Many proprietors live with their wives and children quite isolated in the midst of the slaves, so

CHA  
tha  
pall  
T  
ther  
chee  
of t  
dres  
cloth  
Geor  
acqu  
them  
and  
On  
appo  
expe  
black  
glove  
it. I  
last s  
press  
and  
Whe  
starte



that the danger of any popular movement is truly appalling.

The negroes, so far as I have yet seen them, whether in domestic service or on the farms, appear very cheerful and free from care, better fed than a large part of the labouring class of Europe ; and, though meanly dressed, and often in patched garments, never scantily clothed for the climate. We asked a woman in Georgia, whether she was the slave of a family of our acquaintance. She replied, merrily, " Yes, I belong to them, and they belong to me." She was, in fact, born and brought up on the estate.

On another occasion we were proceeding in a well-appointed carriage with a planter, when we came unexpectedly to a dead halt. Inquiring the cause, the black coachman said he had dropped one of his white gloves on the road, and must drive back and try to find it. He could not recollect within a mile where he had last seen it : we remonstrated, but in vain. As time pressed, the master in despair took off his own gloves, and saying he had a second pair, gave them to him. When our charioteer had deliberately put them on, we started again.



## CHAPTER IX.

*Return to Charleston.—Fossil Human Skeleton.—Geographical Distribution of Quadrupeds in North America.—Severe Frost in 1835 in South Carolina.—White Limestone of the Cooper River and Santee Canal.—Referred to the Eocene Period, not intermediate between Tertiary and Chalk.—Lime-sinks.—Species of Shells common to Eocene Strata in America and Europe.—Causes of the increased Insalubrity of the Low Region of South Carolina.—Condition of the Slave Population.—Cheerfulness of the Negroes: their Vanity.—State of Animal Existence.—Invalidity of Marriages.—The Coloured Population multiply faster than the Whites.—Effects of the Interference of Abolitionists.—Laws against Education.—Gradual Emancipation equally desirable for the Whites and the Coloured Race.*

*Jan. 13. 1842.*—FROM Savannah we returned to Charleston in a steam-ship, on board of which we found an agreeable party, consisting chiefly of officers of the U. S. army returning from Florida, where they had nearly brought to a close a war of extermination carried on for many years against the Seminole Indians. They gave a lively picture of the hardships they underwent in the swamps and morasses during this inglorious campaign, in the course of which the lives of perhaps as many whites as Seminoles were sacrificed. The war is said to have been provoked by the attacks of the Indians on new settlers.

In the Museum at Charleston, I was shown a fossil human skull from Guadaloupe, imbedded in solid limestone, which they say belongs to the same skeleton of a female as that now preserved in the British Museum, where the skull is wanting.



Dr. Bachman, whom I saw here, is engaged in a great work on the quadrupeds of North America. He pointed out to me the boundary of several distinct zones of indigenous mammalia, extending east and west on this continent, where there are no great natural barriers running in the same direction, such as mountain ridges, deserts, or wide arms of the sea to check the migrations of species. The climate alone has been sufficient to limit their range. The mammiferous fauna of the State of New York, comprising about forty species, is distinct from that of the arctic region 600 miles north of it, and described by Dr. Richardson. It is equally distinct from that of South Carolina and Georgia, a territory about as far distant to the south. In Texas, where frosts are unknown, another assemblage of species is met with. The opossum, for example, of that country (*Didelphis cancrivora*) is different from that of Virginia. The latter (*Didelphis virginiana*) is one of those species which is common to many provinces, extending from Florida as far north as Pennsylvania, where it has been observed while the snow was lying two feet deep on the ground. The racoon has a still wider habitation, ranging as did the buffalo originally (*Bison americanus*) from the north of Canada to the Gulf of Mexico. But these are exceptions to the general rule. Similar restrictions seem to have prevailed in the era of extinct quadrupeds, the great mastodon (*M. giganteus*) having evidently abounded in Canada and New York, as well as Kentucky and Georgia, while the megatherium and mylodon were almost entirely confined to the Southern States.

When discoursing here on the influence of climate, many accounts were given me of a frost which visited



Charleston in February, 1835, so severe that wine was frozen in bottles. The tops of the Pride-of-India tree, of Chinese origin, were killed: all the oranges, of which there were large orchards, were destroyed. Beds of oysters, exposed between high and low water mark, perished in the estuaries, and the effluvia from them was so powerful as to injure the health of the inhabitants.

Several planters attribute the failure of the cotton crop this year (1842) to the unusual size and number of the icebergs, which floated southwards last spring from Hudson's and Baffin's Bays, and may have cooled the sea and checked the early growth of the cotton plant. So numerous and remote are the disturbing causes in meteorology! Forty degrees of latitude intervene between the region where the ice-floes are generated and that where the crops are raised, whose death-warrant they are supposed to have carried with them.

Before I visited the Southern States, I had heard from several American geologists that calcareous rocks occurred there intermediate in age between the chalk and the tertiary formations, and helping to fill the void which separates those two well-marked eras in the European series. Having satisfied myself that all the white limestone of the Savannah river was referable to the Eocene epoch, I now set out to determine whether the same could be said of that exposed to view on the Cooper river and Santee canal, about thirty miles north of Charleston. I was accompanied in an excursion of a week by Dr. Ravenel, who kindly offered to be my guide; and we first visited a plantation of his, called "The Grove," near the mouth of the Cooper river,



where, in the marshes, there are deep deposits of clay and sand, enclosing the stools and trunks of the cypress, hickory, and cedar, often imbedded in an erect position, which must have grown in fresh water, but are now sunk six and even sixteen feet below the level of high water. Every where there are proofs of the coast having sunk, and the subsidence seems to have gone on in very modern times ; for some old cedars still standing on the surface have been killed by the encroachment of the salt water. We had come from Charleston in a small private steam-boat, and after passing Strawberry Ferry and entering the Santee Canal, were allowed by favour to pass through the locks without paying tolls, and, contrary to the usual regulations, which exclude steam-boats. The thoughtless negroes allowed the chimney of our vessel to get so choked up with soot that we were soon forced to quit this conveyance, and travel by land. The barges on the canal are constructed of different sizes, so that, after going down laden with cotton, they are put one into another when returning empty, and thus escape a large part of the tolls at the locks. The slaves are fond of cock-fighting ; and on the prow of each barge there stood usually a game-cock, perched as if he were the ensign of the vessel.

We passed the Brygon Swamp, about forty miles north of Charleston, where the remains of the mastodon were found when the canal was cut. Wild animals might still be mired in the same morass, latitude  $33^{\circ} 20' N.$ , showing that these fossils in the Southern States occur in precisely the same geological position as in New York and Canada. We slept at Wantcot, and then went by Eutaw to Vance's Ferry on the Santee



river, then to Cave Hall, examining the tertiary white marl and limestone, and collecting the shells and corals contained in it. Lime-sinks, or funnel-shaped cavities, are frequent in this country, arising from natural tunnels and cavities in the subjacent limestone, through some of which subterranean rivers flow. An account was given me of a new hollow which opened about fifteen years ago, about two miles south of the Santee river, into which a mule drawing a plough sank suddenly. About a hundred yards from the same spot, I saw a large cavern sixty feet high at its entrance in the white limestone, from the mouth of which flowed a small stream. The undermining effect of such rivers explains the linear arrangement so common in lime-sinks in South Carolina and Georgia. The walls of such "sinks" are vertical, and the strata exposed to view consist usually of clay and sand, which rest upon the limestone.

From Cave Hall we went in a north-westerly direction to Stoudenmire Creek, a tributary of the Santee, where the siliceous burr-stone and brick-red loam appear above the white limestone. In the course of this examination, I satisfied myself that the limestone and white marl, a formation which must sometimes amount to 120 feet in thickness, in the low region of Cooper river and the Santee canal, are a continuation of the same Eocene deposit which I had seen at Shell Bluff, at Jacksonboro', and other places on the Savannah river, and which I afterwards observed at Wilmington, in North Carolina. I found many species in all these places, common to those of Claiborne, in Alabama, where the largest number (more than 200) of Eocene shells in a good state of preservation have been met

with  
Mr.  
vene  
of S  
er ri  
know  
same  
cont  
tee ri  
At  
*Idmo*  
*chara*  
shells  
remin  
of the  
ber C  
some  
and s  
howev  
This  
have  
the cr  
most  
species  
South  
*Pecten*  
*chrym*  
*mus in*  
belief  
and te  
the So  
in cha  
those c



with; and are described and figured in the works of Mr. Conrad and Mr. Lea of Philadelphia. Dr. Ravenel pointed out to me some remarkable new species of *Scutella* at the Grove, near the mouth of the Cooper river, and these were accompanied by several well-known Eocene shells like those of Claiborne. The same white limestone and marl may be said to be continuous for forty miles, from the Grove to the Santee river.

At Eutaw and other points, corals of the genera *Idmonea*, *Acystis*, *Pustulopora*, *Vincularia*, and *Eschara* occur, with a species of *Scalaria*, and other shells. These fossils, and the rock containing them, reminded me so much of the straw-coloured limestone of the cretaceous formation seen on the banks of Timber Creek in New Jersey, that I do not wonder that some errors had arisen from confounding the tertiary and secondary deposits of the south. The species, however, prove on closer inspection to be different. This lithological resemblance of the rocks seems to have led to the admission into Dr. Morton's list of the cretaceous fossils of North America; a list for the most part very correct, of the following seven tertiary species which really came from the Eocene strata of South Carolina. These are, *Balanus peregrinus*, *Pecten calvatus*, *P. membranosus*, *Terebratula lachryma*, *Conus gyratus*, *Scutella Lyelli*, and *Echinus infulatus* (see Morton's *Synopsis*, pl. 10.). The belief that all these species were common to the chalk and tertiary strata led naturally to the opinion that in the Southern States a formation existed intermediate in character between the rocks of the secondary and those of the tertiary periods.



I consider the burr-stone and associated clays and sands of Stoudenmire and Aikin, South Carolina, and of Augusta, Millhaven, and Stony Bluff, in Georgia, to belong also to an Eocene deposit, and to be higher in the series than the white limestone formation.

Out of 125 species of Eocene shells which I collected in the Southern States, or which were presented to me, I have only been able to identify seven with European species of the same epoch. These are *Trochus agglutinans*, *Solarium canaliculatum*, *Bonellia terebellata*, *Infundibulum trochiforme*, *Lithodomus dactylus*, *Cardita planicosta*, and *Ostrea bellovacina*.

But there are a considerable number of representative species, and an equal number of forms peculiar to these older tertiary strata of America.

The *Ostrea sellæformis*, which may be considered as representing the *O. flabellula* of the Paris and London basins, appears to be one of the most characteristic and widely disseminated Eocene shells in Virginia, South Carolina, and Georgia, for I found it at Shell Bluff and on the Santee river, and the James river, in Virginia.

On the banks of the Cooper river, we heard occasionally the melodious and liquid note of the mocking-bird in the woods. It is of a fearless disposition, and approaches very near to the houses. I can well imagine that in summer, when the leaves are out, and the flowers in full splendour, this region must be most beautiful. But it is then that the planters are compelled by the fever and ague to abandon their country seats. It was not so formerly. When the English army was campaigning on the Cooper and Santee rivers in the revolutionary war, they encamped with impunity in places



where it would now be death to remain for a few days in the hot season. I inquired what could have caused so great a change, and found the phenomenon as much a matter of controversy as the origin of the malaria in Italy. The clearing away of the wood from large spaces is the chief alteration in the physical condition of this region in the course of the last sixty years, whereby the damp and swampy grounds undergo annually the process of being dried up by a burning sun. Marshes which are overflowed by the tide twice in every twenty-four hours near the neighbouring coast, both in South Carolina and Georgia, are perfectly healthy. Dr. Arnold remarks, in his Roman History, that Rome was more healthy before the drainage of the Campagna, and when there was more natural wood in Italy and in northern Europe generally. In the southern States of the Union there are no fevers in winter, at a season when there is no large extent of damp and boggy soil exposed to a hot sun, and undergoing desiccation.

On our way home from Charleston, by the railway from Orangeburg, I observed a thin black line of charred vegetable matter exposed in the perpendicular section of the bank. The sand cast out in digging the railway had been thrown up on the original soil, on which the pine forest grew; and farther excavations had laid open the junction of the rubbish and the soil. As geologists, we may learn from this fact how a thin seam of vegetable matter, an inch or two thick, is often the only monument to be looked for of an ancient surface of dry land, on which a luxuriant forest may have grown for thousands of years. Even this seam of friable matter may be washed away when the region is submerged, and, if not, rain-water percolating freely through the



sand may, in the course of ages, gradually carry away the carbon.

As there were no inns in that part of South Carolina through which we passed in this short tour, and as we were every where received hospitably by the planters, I had many opportunities of seeing their mode of life, and the condition of the domestic and farm slaves. In some rich houses maize, or Indian corn, and rice were entirely substituted for wheaten bread. The usual style of living is that of English country gentlemen. They have well-appointed carriages and horses, and well-trained black servants. The conversation of the gentlemen turned chiefly on agricultural subjects, shooting, and horse-racing. Several of the mansions were surrounded with deer-parks.

Arriving often at a late hour at our quarters in the evening, we heard the negroes singing loudly and joyously in chorus after their day's work was over. On one estate, about forty black children were brought up daily before the windows of the planter's house, and fed in sight of the family, otherwise, we were told, the old women who have charge of them might, in the absence of the parents, appropriate part of their allowance to themselves. All the slaves have some animal food daily. When they are ill, they sometimes refuse to take medicine, except from the hands of the master or mistress; and it is of all tasks the most delicate for the owners to decide when they are really sick, and when only shamming from indolence.

After the accounts I had read of the sufferings of slaves, I was agreeably surprised to find them, in general, so remarkably cheerful and light-hearted. It is true that I saw no gangs working under overseers on sugar-

plant  
in the  
in suc  
witne  
for da  
and f  
usuall  
peculiar  
asked  
let ou  
she tol  
mark,  
year fo  
inn in  
owner  
ess of  
value,  
toria.  
own, w  
simplic  
the hig  
fair test  
they ha  
least fro  
We mig  
tives th  
their du  
losophis  
until we  
degrada  
upon m  
impossib  
persons



plantations, but out of two millions and a half of slaves in the United States, the larger proportion are engaged in such farming occupations and domestic services as I witnessed in Georgia and South Carolina. I was often for days together with negroes who served me as guides, and found them as talkative and chatty as children, usually boasting of their master's wealth, and their own peculiar merits. At an inn in Virginia, a female slave asked us to guess for how many dollars a year she was let out by her owner. We named a small sum, but she told us exultingly, that we were much under the mark, for the landlord paid fifty dollars, or ten guineas a year for her hire. A good-humoured butler, at another inn in the same state, took care to tell me that his owner got 30*l.* a year for him. The coloured stewardess of a steam-vessel was at great pains to tell us her value, and how she came by the name of Queen Victoria. When we recollect that the dollars are not their own, we can hardly refrain from smiling at the childlike simplicity with which they express their satisfaction at the high price set on them. That price, however, is a fair test of their intelligence and moral worth, of which they have just reason to feel proud, and their pride is at least free from all sordid and mercenary considerations. We might even say that they labour with higher motives than the whites—a disinterested love of doing their duty. I am aware that we may reflect and philosophise on this peculiar and amusing form of vanity, until we perceive in it the evidence of extreme social degradation; but the first impression which it made upon my mind was very consolatory, as I found it impossible to feel a painful degree of commiseration for persons so exceedingly well satisfied with themselves.



South Carolina is one of the few states where there is a numerical preponderance of slaves. One night, at Charleston, I went to see the guard-house, where there is a strong guard kept constantly in arms, and on the alert. Every citizen is obliged to serve in person, or find a substitute; and the maintenance of such a force, the strict laws against importing books relating to emancipation, and the prohibition to bring back slaves who have been taken by their masters into free states, show that the fears of the owner, whether well-founded or not, are real.

During our stay at Charleston, we were present at a negro wedding, where the bride and bridegroom, and nearly all the company, were of unmixed African race. They were very merry. The bride and bridesmaids all dressed in white. The marriage service performed by an Episcopal clergyman. Not long afterwards, when staying at a farm-house in North Carolina, I happened to ask a planter if one of his negroes with whom we had been conversing was married. He told me, Yes, he had a wife on that estate, as well as another, her sister, on a different property which belonged to him; but that there was no legal validity in the marriage ceremony. I remarked, that he must be mistaken, as an Episcopal minister at Charleston would not have lent himself to the performance of a sacred rite, if it were nugatory in practice, and in the eye of the law. He replied, that he himself was a lawyer by profession, and that no legal validity ever had been, or ought to be, given to the marriage tie, so long as the right of sale could separate parent and child, husband and wife. Such separations, he said, could not always be prevented, when slaves multiplied fast, though they were avoided



by the masters as far as possible. He defended the custom of bringing up the children of the same estate in common, as it was far more humane not to cherish domestic ties among slaves. On the same farm I talked with several slaves who had been set to fell timber by task-work, and had finished by the middle of the day. They never appeared to be overworked; and the rapidity with which they increase beyond the whites in the United States shows that they are not in a state of discomfort, oppression, and misery. Doubtless, in the same manner as in Ireland and parts of Great Britain, the want of education, mental culture, and respect for themselves, favours improvident marriages among the poor; so the state of mere animal existence of the slave, and his low moral and intellectual condition, coupled with kind treatment and all freedom from care, promote their multiplication. The effect of the institution on the progress of the whites is most injurious, and, after travelling in the northern States, and admiring their rapid advance, it is most depressing to the spirits. There appears to be no place in society for poor whites. If they are rich, their slaves multiply, and from motives of kindly feeling towards retainers, and often from false pride, they are very unwilling to sell them. Hence they are constantly tempted to maintain a larger establishment than is warranted by the amount of their capital, and they often become involved in their circumstances, and finally bankrupt. The prudence, temper, and decision of character required to manage a plantation successfully is very great. It is notorious that the hardest taskmasters to the slaves are those who come from the northern free States.

I often asked myself, when in the midst of a large



plantation, what steps I would take if I had inherited such a property from British ancestors. I thought, first, of immediately emancipating all the slaves, but I was reminded that the law humanely provides, in that case, that I should still support them, so that I might ruin myself and family; and it would still be a question whether those whom I had released from bondage would be happier, or would be prepared for freedom. I then proposed to begin with education as a preliminary step. Here I was met with the objection that, since the abolition movement and the fanatical exertions of missionaries, severe statutes had been enacted, making it penal to teach slaves to read and write. I must first, therefore, endeavour to persuade my fellow slaveholders to repeal these laws against improving the moral and intellectual condition of the slaves. I remarked that, in order to overcome the apathy and reluctance of the planters, the same kind of agitation, the same "pressure from without," might be indispensable, which had brought about our West Indian emancipation. To this my American friends replied, that the small number of our slaves, so insignificant in comparison to their two and a half millions, had made an indemnity to the owner possible; also that the free negroes, in small islands, could always be held in subjection by the British fleets; and, lastly, that England had a right to interfere and legislate for her own colonies, whereas the northern States of the Union, and foreigners, had no constitutional right to intermeddle with the domestic concerns of the slave States. Such intervention, by exciting the fears and indignation of the planters, had retarded, and must always be expected to retard, the progress of the cause. They also reminded

me I  
propo  
the B  
if the  
the L  
maica  
in the  
in Cor  
ried to  
The  
and en  
ening  
the sub  
ished a  
spoke  
The co  
to the p  
"well-r  
society.  
of the p  
a great  
openly  
1831-2  
ing gro  
tained  
Marylan  
manum  
been tak  
and slav  
the mon  
that mis  
re-action  
laws wer



me how long and obstinate a struggle the West Indian proprietors had made against the emancipationists in the British House of Commons; and they hinted, that if the different islands had been directly represented in the Lower House, and there had been Dukes of Jamaica, Marquises of Antigua, and Earls of Barbadoes in the Upper House, as the slave states are represented in Congress, the measure would never have been carried to this day.

The more I reflected on the condition of the slaves, and endeavoured to think on a practicable plan for hastening the period of their liberation, the more difficult the subject appeared to me, and the more I felt astonished at the confidence displayed by so many anti-slavery speakers and writers on both sides of the Atlantic. The course pursued by these agitators shows that, next to the positively wicked, the class who are usually called "well-meaning persons" are the most mischievous in society. Before the year 1830, a considerable number of the planters were in the habit of regarding slavery as a great moral and political evil, and many of them openly proclaimed it to be so in the Virginia debates of 1831-2. The emancipation party was gradually gaining ground, and not unreasonable hopes were entertained that the States of Kentucky, Virginia, and Maryland would soon fix on some future day for the manumission of their slaves. This step had already been taken in most of the States north of the Potomac, and slavery was steadily retreating southwards. From the moment that the abolition movement began, and that missionaries were sent to the southern States, a re-action was perceived—the planters took the alarm—laws were passed against education—the condition of



the slave was worse ; and not a few of the planters, by dint of defending their institutions against the arguments and misrepresentations of their assailants, came actually to delude themselves into a belief that slavery was legitimate, wise, and expedient—a positive good in itself. There were many, indeed, who thought differently, but who no longer dared to express their opinions freely on the subject.

It is natural that those planters who are of benevolent dispositions, and indulgent to their slaves, and who envy the northern proprietor, who, now that the Indians have passed away, has the good fortune not to share his country with another race, should be greatly irritated when the cruelty of the slave-holders, as a class, is held up to the reprobation of mankind. A deep sense of injustice, and a feeling of indignation, disinclines them to persevere in advocating the cause of emancipation. I was so much occupied and absorbed in my scientific pursuits that I never felt tempted to touch on this exciting subject, and therefore, perhaps, the planters spoke out their sentiments to me more freely. "Labour," they said, "is as compulsory in Europe as here ; but in Europe they who refuse to work have the alternative of starvation ; here the slave who is idle has the alternative of corporal punishment ; for, whether he works or not, he must always be fed and clothed." They complained to me much of the manner in which the escape of runaway slaves was favoured in the free States. Their innocence, they said, is always assumed, and the cruelty and harshness of their owners, taken for granted ; whereas the fugitives often consist of good-for-nothing characters, who would have been put into gaol in Europe, but who here are left at large,

beca  
vices  
suppo  
were  
lic wo  
trate,  
mer o  
hend  
gies,  
inter  
induc  
is int  
quent  
fair s  
and p  
we co  
the pr  
some  
same f  
ern sta  
ness, t  
While  
the ov  
things  
from h  
or safe  
years.

Had  
been o  
have o  
almost  
We m  
monop



because their masters are unwilling to lose their services by imprisonment, while they are compelled to support them. If the same delinquents, they say, were flying from the constable in a free State, the public would sympathise with the police and the magistrate, and if they bore on their backs the marks of former chastisement in gaol, the general desire to apprehend them would be still more eager. These apologies, and their assurance that they found it to their interest to treat their slaves kindly, had no effect in inducing me to believe that, where such great power is intrusted to the owner, that power will not be frequently abused ; but it has made me desire to see a fair statement of the comparative statistics of crimes and punishments in slave states and free countries. If we could fairly estimate the misery of all offenders in the prisons, penitentiaries, and penal settlements of some large European province, and then deduct the same from the sufferings of the slaves in a large southern state of the Union, the excess alone ought, in fairness, to be laid to the charge of the slave-owners. While pointing out the evil unreservedly, we should do the owner the justice to remember that the system of things which we deprecate has been inherited by him from his British ancestors, and that it is rarely possible or safe to bring about a great social reform in a few years.

Had the measure of emancipating all the slaves been carried through as rapidly as some abolitionists have desired, the fate of the negroes might have been almost as deplorable as that of the aboriginal Indians. We must never forget that the slaves have at present a monopoly of the labour-market ; the planters being



bound to feed and clothe them; and being unable to turn them off and take white labourers in their place. The coloured population, therefore, are protected against the free competition of the white emigrants, with whom, if they were once liberated, they could no longer successfully contend. I am by no means disposed to assume that the natural capacities of the negroes, who always appeared to me to be an amiable, gentle, and inoffensive race, may not be equal in a moral and intellectual point of view to those of the Europeans, provided the coloured population were placed in circumstances equally favourable for their development. But it would be visionary to expect that, under any imaginable system, this race could at once acquire as much energy, and become as rapidly progressive, as the Anglo-Saxons. To inspire them with such an aptitude for rapid advancement must be the work of time—the result of improvement carried on through several successive generations. Time is precisely the condition for which the advocates of the immediate liberation of the blacks would never sufficiently allow. The great experiment now making in the West Indies affords no parallel case, because the climate there is far more sultry, relaxing, and trying to Europeans, than in the Southern States of the Union; and it is well known that the West Indian proprietors have no choice, the whites being so few in number, that the services of the coloured race are indispensable.

Professor Tucker, of Virginia, has endeavoured to show, that the density of population in the slave States will amount, in about sixty years, to fifty persons in a square mile. Long before that period arrives, the most productive lands will have been all cultivated, and some

CHA

of t  
fall  
and  
to l  
nom  
caus  
ema  
one  
how  
half  
of sl  
in six  
insta  
same  
once  
with  
badg  
after  
inferi  
last n  
intelle  
to the  
inant  
genia  
advan

A  
desire  
really  
way i  
intere  
hibit  
ists, w  
rate,



of the inferior soils resorted to: the price of labour will fall gradually as compared to the means of subsistence, and it will, at length, be for the interest of the masters to liberate their slaves, and to employ the more economical and productive labour of freemen. The same causes will then come into operation which formerly emancipated the villeins of western Europe, and will one day set free the serfs of Russia. It is to be hoped, however, that the planters will not wait for more than half a century for such an euthanasia of the institution of slavery; for the increase of the coloured population in sixty years would be a formidable evil, since in this instance they are not, like villeins and serfs, of the same race as their masters. They cannot be fused at once into the general mass, and become amalgamated with the whites, for their colour still remains as the badge of their former bondage, so that they continue, after their fetters are removed, to form a separate and inferior caste. How long this state of things would last must depend on their natural capabilities, moral, intellectual, and physical; but if in these they be equal to the whites, they would eventually become the dominant race, since the climate of the south, more congenial to their constitutions, would give them a decided advantage.

A philanthropist may well be perplexed when he desires to devise some plan of interference which may really promote the true interests of the negro. But the way in which the planters would best consult their own interests appears to me very clear. They should exhibit more patience and courage towards the abolitionists, whose influence and numbers they greatly overrate, and lose no time in educating the slaves, and



encouraging private manumission to prepare the way for general emancipation. All seem agreed that the states most ripe for this great reform are Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Kentucky, and Missouri. Experience has proved in the northern States that emancipation immediately checks the increase of the coloured population, and causes the relative number of the whites to augment very rapidly. Every year, in proportion as the north-western States fill up, and as the boundary of the new settlers in the west is removed farther and farther, beyond the Mississippi and Missouri, the cheaper and more accessible lands south of the Potomac will offer a more tempting field for colonisation to the swarms of New Englanders, who are averse to migrating into slave states. Before this influx of white labourers, the coloured race will give way, and it will require the watchful care of the philanthropist, whether in the north or south, to prevent them from being thrown out of employment, and reduced to destitution.

If due exertions be made to cultivate the minds, and protect the rights and privileges of the negroes, and it nevertheless be found that they cannot contend, when free, with white competitors, but are superseded by them, still the cause of humanity will have gained. The coloured people, though their numbers remain stationary, or even diminish, may in the mean time be happier than now, and attain to a higher moral rank. They would, moreover, escape the cruelty and injustice which are the invariable consequences of the exercise of irresponsible power, especially where authority must be sometimes delegated by the planter to agents of inferior education and coarser feelings. And last.

not  
the  
suga  
acco  
and  
vere  
H  
the  
asser  
conce  
devel  
that  
or fr  
quali  
dition  
ern S  
overf



not least, emancipation would effectually put a stop to the breeding, selling, and exporting of slaves to the sugar-growing States of the South, where, unless the accounts we usually read of slavery be exaggerated and distorted, the life of the negro is shortened by severe toil and suffering.

Had the white man never interposed to transplant the negro into the New World, the most generous asserters of the liberties of the coloured race would have conceded that Africa afforded space enough for their development. Neither in their new country, nor in that of their origin, whether in a condition of slavery or freedom, have they as yet exhibited such superior qualities and virtues as to make us anxious that additional millions of them should multiply in the southern States of the Union ; still less, that they should overflow into Texas and Mexico.



## CHAPTER X.

*Wilmington, N. C.—Mount Vernon.—Return to Philadelphia.—Reception of Mr. Dickens.—Museum and Fossil human Bones.—Penitentiary.—Churches.—Religious Excitement.—Coloured People of Fortune.—Obstacles to their obtaining Political and Social Equality.—No natural Antipathy between the Races.—Negro Reservations.*

*Jan. 22.*—I now turned my course northwards, and, after a short voyage in a steamer from Charleston, landed at Wilmington, in North Carolina. Here I collected fossils from tertiary formations of two ages, the Miocene marls, and an underlying Eocene limestone, harder than that of Shell Bluff and the Santee canal before mentioned ; but containing many of the same shells, corals, and teeth of fishes. I then went by railway to South Washington, visiting several farms on the banks of the north-east branch of Cape Fear river. Here I found cretaceous green marls, similar to those which I had seen 350 miles to the N. E. in New Jersey, with belemnites and other characteristic organic remains, some of species not previously known.

On several of the small plantations here I found the proprietors by no means in a thriving state, evidently losing ground from year to year, and some of them talking of abandoning the exhausted soil, and migrating with their slaves to the south-western States. If, while large numbers of the negroes were thus carried to the South, slavery had been abolished in North Carolina, the black population might ere this have been



reduced considerably in numbers, without suffering those privations to which a free competition with white labourers must expose them, wherever great facilities for emigration are not afforded.

A railway train shooting rapidly in the dark through the pine forests of North Carolina has a most singular appearance, resembling a large rocket fired horizontally, with a brilliant stream of revolving sparks extending behind the engine for several hundred yards, each spark being a minute particle of wood, which, after issuing from the chimney of the furnace, remains ignited for several seconds in the air. Now and then these fiery particles, which are invisible by day, instead of lagging in the rear, find entrance by favour of the wind through the open windows of the car, and, while some burn holes in the traveller's cloak, others make their way into his eyes, causing them to smart most painfully.

At Petersburg, Mr. Ruffin, the agriculturist, and Mr. Tuomey, accompanied me in an excursion to collect tertiary fossils in the neighbourhood, and I examined with much instruction the organic remains in their cabinets. At Washington I saw M. Nicollet, and had a long conversation with this eminent astronomer and naturalist, who died the year after. He had just returned from a geographical and geological survey of the Far West, and higher parts of the valley of the Mississippi and Missouri. He showed me the ammonites, baculites, and other chalk fossils brought by him from those distant regions, which establish the wide range of that peculiar assemblage of organic remains characteristic of the cretaceous era.

From the deck of our steam-boat on the Potomac we saw Mount Vernon, formerly the plantation of General



Washington. Instead of exhibiting, like the farms in the northern States, a lively picture of progress and improvement, this property was described to me by all as worn out, and of less value now than in the days of its illustrious owner. The bears and wolves, they say, are actually re-entering their ancient haunts, which would scarcely have happened if slavery had been abolished in Virginia.

The air was balmy on the Potomac the last day of January, and the winter had been so mild in the southern States, that we were surprised, on recrossing the Susquehanna at Havre de Grâce in Maryland, to see large masses of floating ice brought down from the Appalachian hills, and to feel the air sensibly cooled while we were ferried over the broad river. It struck me as a curious coincidence, and one not entirely accidental, that, precisely in this part of our journey, I once more saw the low grounds covered with huge boulders, reminding me how vast a territory in the South I had passed over without encountering a single erratic block. These far transported fragments of rock are decidedly a northern phenomenon, or belong to the colder latitudes of the globe, being rare and exceptional in warmer regions.

*Philadelphia, Feb. 1.*—The newspapers are filled with accounts of the enthusiastic reception which Mr. Charles Dickens is meeting with every where. Such homage has never been paid to any foreigner since Lafayette visited the States. The honours may appear extravagant, but it is in the nature of popular enthusiasm to run into excess. I find that several of my American friends are less disposed than I am to sympathise with the movement, regarding it as more

akin  
pres  
U. S  
not ;  
sivel  
Dick  
for a  
feelin  
the A  
warn  
eigne  
curios  
but a  
away  
rank,  
a cele  
geniu  
works  
an in  
WH  
ings o  
Acade  
forme  
Brazil  
which  
togeth  
ing a  
than t  
inform  
human  
were d  
The so



akin to lion-hunting than hero-worship. They express a doubt whether Walter Scott, had he visited the U. S., would have been so much idolised. Perhaps not; for Scott's poems and romances were less extensively circulated amongst the millions than the tales of Dickens. There may be no precedent in Great Britain for a whole people thus unreservedly indulging their feelings of admiration for a favourite author; but if so, the Americans deserve the more credit for obeying their warm impulses. Of course, many who attend the foreigner's crowded levee are merely gratifying a vulgar curiosity by staring at an object of notoriety; but none but a very intelligent population could be thus carried away to flatter and applaud a man who has neither rank, wealth, nor power, who is not a military hero or a celebrated political character, but simply a writer of genius, whose pictures of men and manners, and whose works of fiction, have been here, as in his own country, an inexhaustible source of interest and amusement.

When at Philadelphia I was present at several meetings of the American Philosophical Society, and of the Academy of Natural Sciences. In the museum of the former body I was shown a limestone from Santos, in Brazil, procured by Captain Elliott, of the U. S. navy, which contains a human skull, teeth, and other bones, together with fragments of shells, some of them retaining a portion of their colour. The rock is less solid than that of Guadaloupe, which it resembles. We are informed, that the remains of several hundred other human skeletons, imbedded in a like calcareous tufa, were dug out at the same place, about the year 1827.\* The soil covering the solid stone supported a growth of

\* American Philosophical Transactions, 1828, p. 285.



large trees, which covered the face of a hill on the side of the river Santas. The height above the sea is not mentioned, and it is to be regretted that the notes obtained by Dr. Meigs from Captain Elliott were not fuller. I observed serpulæ in the rock, a shell which the natives would not have carried inland for food. On the whole, therefore, I should infer, though we need further evidence, that this stone has emerged from the sea, and that there had been previously a submergence of dry land, perhaps the site of an Indian burial-ground.

Dr. Harlan, the zealous and accomplished osteologist, who, to my great regret, died the year after (1843), at New Orleans, took me to see the entire skeleton of the large fossil mastodon, or so-called Missouriium, brought by Mr. Koch from the state of Missouri. He pointed out several errors in the manner in which the tusks and bones were put together. This splendid fossil has since been purchased by the British Museum, taken to pieces in London, and correctly set up again under the direction of Mr. Owen. It is the largest individual of the species (*Mastodon giganteus*) yet discovered; for Dr. Harlan and I compared the femur with that of the largest mastodon previously known, from the state of New York, and preserved in Peale's Museum in this city. The dimensions of the Philadelphia skeleton are less gigantic.

I spent six weeks very agreeably in this city, much of my time being occupied in delivering a short course of lectures on geology, and in comparing, with the friendly aid of several naturalists, especially Mr. Conrad, the fossils collected by me in the South with those previously known, most of which are preserved in the public and private cabinets here. Mr. Lea's collection of

shell  
fluvia  
to me  
of th  
such  
the w  
its riv  
seaso  
zoolo  
regio  
ferent  
panie  
forme  
fresh-  
strata  
sidera  
taries,  
in the  
and h  
shape  
stream

We  
delphi  
arate  
sional  
mitiga  
ous occ  
is not  
our wo  
reform  
institut

A fe  
at the



shells, which we visited more than once, rich in the fluviatile species of North America, was most interesting to me. There seems no end to the freshwater mussels of the genus *Unio*, as well as other fluviatile forms, such as *Melania*, which have been created to people the waters of a continent unrivalled in the number of its rivers, all so copiously filled with water during every season of the year. Such an obvious relation of the zoological to the geographical peculiarities of a great region is striking, and reminds the geologist of the different states of the animal creation, which have accompanied the successive changes of the earth's surface in former ages. The same species of *Unio*, and of other fresh-water shells, preserved in a fossil state in alluvial strata, forming terraces one above the other to a considerable height above the Mississippi and its tributaries, show that the fauna here alluded to, so modern in the earth's history, is nevertheless of high antiquity, and has outlasted some important modifications in the shape of the valleys and levels of the North American streams.

We were taken to see the Penitentiary at Philadelphia, where all the prisoners are confined in separate cells. They see the keepers, chaplain, and occasional visitors, by which the rigour of their solitude is mitigated. They are taught to read, and have numerous occupations. If we recollect that this establishment is not an asylum for the poor, aged, and destitute, like our workhouses, but a place for the punishment and reform of criminals, we may regard it as a humane institution, and it appeared to me admirably managed.

A few years ago, an American professor being asked at the end of a short stay in London whether he had



been pleased with his reception, said he had been often invited out to dinner, but no one during his whole stay had offered him a seat in their pew in church. At Philadelphia, besides other kinds of hospitality, we had certainly no reason to complain of any want of attention in this respect, for we had pressing invitations to private pews in no less than six different Episcopal churches soon after our arrival, of which we availed ourselves on as many successive Sundays, and were struck with the handsome style of the buildings, and the comfortable fitting up of the pews. In regard to the preaching in these and in most of the Episcopalian, Presbyterian, Baptist, and Unitarian churches which I entered in the United States, I thought it good, and there seemed to me to be two great advantages at least in the voluntary principle: first, that the ministers are in no danger of going to sleep; and, secondly, that they concern themselves much less with politics than is the case with us. To be without a body of dissenters, dissatisfied with their exclusion from ecclesiastical endowments is a national blessing, which not only every statesman, but every churchman, will admit. I am by no means prepared to say whether there may not be a balance of evil in the voluntary system sufficient to outweigh the gain alluded to. While here, I heard complaints of the religious excitement into which the city had been just thrown by the arrival of a popular New England preacher, who attracted such crowds that at length all the sittings of his church were monopolized by the fair sex. American gallantry forbids that a woman should remain standing while gentlemen are comfortably seated in their pews, so that at last the men were totally excluded. Notice was immediately given

that  
men,  
riosit  
folds.  
of riv  
be le  
palia  
increa  
assur  
betwe  
nine  
day.  
exper  
not ki  
dwelli  
host o  
were  
gence  
and th  
in the  
gloom  
The y  
leisure  
ceedin  
guardi  
Mar  
recent  
flouris  
States  
period  
only d  
revolut  
tified v



that certain services were to be entirely reserved for the men, an announcement well calculated to provoke curiosity, and to tempt many a stray sheep from other folds. It was then thought expedient for the ministers of rival sects to redouble their zeal, that they might not be left behind in the race, and even the sober Episcopalians, though highly disapproving of the movement, increased the number of their services; so that I was assured it would be possible for the same individual between the hours of seven o'clock in the morning and nine in the evening, to go seven times to church in one day. The consequences are too like those occasionally experienced in the "old country," where enthusiasm is not kindled by so much free competition, to be worth dwelling upon. Every day added new recruits to a host of ascetic devotees, and places of public amusement were nearly deserted; at last even the innocent indulgence of social intercourse was not deemed blameless: and the men who had generally escaped the contagion in the midst of their professional avocations, found a gloom cast over society or over their domestic circle. The young ladies, in particular, having abundance of leisure, were filled with a lively sense of their own exceeding wickedness, and the sins of their parents and guardians.

Many of the most respectable Quaker families have recently joined the Episcopal church, which is very flourishing here, not only in this city, but in the United States generally, having quadrupled its numbers in a period during which the population of the Union has only doubled. It is true that immediately after the revolutionary war, when this form of worship was identified with royalist opinions, and when not a few of its



professors left the country for Canada, Nova Scotia, or the mother country, the Episcopal establishment was depressed below its natural level. Its revival and rapid progress are nevertheless remarkable in this republican country, and are perhaps partly owing to the possession of large endowments, especially in the State of New York, rendering it less dependent on voluntary contributions, and partly to the better station of the foreign immigrants from Great Britain belonging to the Anglican church.

I am assured, that if the salaries paid to the whole clergy of all sects in the Union are compared to those of the ministers of any other church in the world they will be found to be in excess in proportion to the population. Whether this be true or not, there is certainly no lack of divinity schools, nor of ecclesiastical buildings, nor of crowded congregations. the men being as regular in their attendance as the women; and the rapidity with which new churches spring up in the wilderness is probably without example elsewhere.

A rare event, the death of a wealthy man of colour, took place during my stay here, and his funeral was attended not only by a crowd of persons of his own race, but also by many highly respectable white merchants, by whom he was held in high esteem. He had made his fortune as a sail-maker, and is said to have been worth, at one time, sixty thousand pounds, but to have lost a great part of his riches by lending money with more generosity than prudence. I was rejoicing that his colour had proved no impediment to his rising in the world, and that he had been allowed so much fair play as to succeed in over-topping the majority of his white competitors, when I learnt, on



further inquiry, that, after giving an excellent education to his children, he had been made unhappy, by finding they must continue, in spite of all their advantages, to belong to an inferior caste. It appeared that, not long before his death, he had been especially mortified, because two of his sons had been refused a hearing at a public meeting, where they wished to speak on some subject connected with trade which concerned them.

In many states, the free blacks have votes, and exert their privileges at elections, yet there is not an instance of a single man of colour, although eligible by law, having been chosen a member of any state legislature. The schools for the coloured population at Boston are well managed, and the black children are said to show as much quickness in learning as the whites. To what extent their faculties might be developed as adults we have as yet no means of judging; for if their first efforts are coldly received, or treated with worse than indifference, as in the case of the young Philadelphians before alluded to, it is impossible that the higher kinds of excellence can be reached in literature, the learned professions, or in a political career. If any individual be gifted with finer genius than the rest, his mind will be the more sensitive to discouragement, especially when it proceeds from a race whose real superiority over his coloured fellow-citizens, in their present condition, he of all others would be the first to appreciate. It is after many trials attended with success, and followed by willing praise and applause, that self-confidence and intellectual power are slowly acquired; and no well educated black has ever yet had an opportunity of



ripening or displaying superior talents in this or any other civilised country. Canada and Ireland teach us how much time and how many generations are required for the blending together, on terms of perfect equality, both social and political, of two nations, the conquerors and the conquered, even where both are of the same race, and decidedly equal in their natural capacities, though differing in religion, manners, and language. But when, in the same community, we have two races so distinct in their physical peculiarities as to cause many naturalists, who have no desire to disparage the negro, to doubt whether both are of the same species, and started originally from the same stock; when one of these, found in Africa in a savage and unprogressive state, has been degraded, by those who first colonized North America, to the lowest place in the social scale—to expect, under such a combination of depressing circumstances, that, in half a century, and in a country where more than six-sevenths of the race are still held in bondage, the newly-emancipated citizens should, under any form of government, attain at once a position of real equality, is a dream of the visionary philanthropist, whose impracticable schemes are more likely to injure than to forward a great cause.

In the West Indies, where circumstances are far more favourable to a fair experiment, we have found how much easier it is to put an end to slavery than to elevate the blacks to an equal standing with the whites in society, and in the management of public affairs. They are however advancing slowly; and, although we hear complaints of commercial losses, consequent on emancipation, and of exports of sugar

and  
negro  
habitu  
happ  
when  
going  
ands  
are a  
such  
with  
ascert  
ration  
guish  
tions  
be sol  
large

The  
United  
obstac  
in the  
proper  
proper  
can at  
equalit  
becomi  
from th  
race.

negroes  
far mor  
race to  
painfull  
arates t

If th



and coffee falling off, there seems little doubt that the negro population, comprising the great bulk of the inhabitants, are better informed, better clothed, and happier, in their own way, than during the period when all were slaves. A gradual transfer of land is going on in Barbadoes, Jamaica, and other large islands, from the original proprietors to the negroes, who are abandoning the cultivation of sugar, and raising such crops and fruits of the earth as they can obtain with moderate labour. There has not been time to ascertain whether the freed men will ever have aspirations after that higher civilization, which distinguishes a few of the more advanced among the nations of western Europe; but this problem has still to be solved with regard to the Chinese and many other large sections of the human family.

The near approach to universal suffrage in the United States appears to me one of the most serious obstacles, both to the disfranchisement of the slaves in the South, and to their obtaining, when freed, a proper station relatively to the whites. Wherever property confers the right of voting, the men of colour can at once be admitted without danger to an absolute equality of political rights, the more industrious alone becoming invested with privileges which are withheld from the indigent and most worthless of the dominant race. Such a recognition of rights not only raises the negroes in their opinion of themselves, but, what is of far more consequence, accustoms a portion of the other race to respect them. In the free states, we were often painfully reminded of the wide chasm which now separates the whites from the emancipated man of colour.

If there be any place where distinctions of birth,



wealth, station, and race should be forgotten, it is the temple where the Christian precept is inculcated that all men are equal before God. On one occasion in New England, when we were attending the administration of the sacrament in an Episcopal church, we saw all the white communicants first come forward, and again retire to their pews, before any of the coloured people advanced, most of whom were as well dressed as ourselves, and some only a shade darker in complexion. In another Episcopal church in New York, the order and sanctity of the service was, for a moment, in danger of being disturbed because some of the whites had been accidentally omitted, so that they came to the altar after the coloured communicants. After a slight confusion, however, our feelings were relieved by the officiating minister proceeding and showing his resolution not to allow any interruption from this accident. I had no opportunity of witnessing the good example said to be set by the Roman Catholic clergy in prohibiting all invidious distinctions in their churches; but we know in Europe how much more the poor and the rich are mingled together indifferently in the performance of their devotions in Romanist churches than in most of the Anglo-protestant congregations.

The extent to which the Americans carry their repugnance to all association with the coloured race on equal terms remained to the last an enigma to me. They feel, for example, an insurmountable objection to sit down to the same table with a well-dressed, well-informed, and well-educated man of colour, while the same persons would freely welcome one of their own race of meaner capacity and ruder manners to boon



companionship. I have no doubt that if I remained here for some years I should imbibe the same feelings, and sympathise with what now appears to me an almost incomprehensible prejudice. If the repugnance arose from any physical causes, any natural antipathy of race, we should not see the rich Southerners employing black slaves to wait on their persons, prepare their food, nurse and suckle their white children, and live with them as mistresses. We should never see the black lady's maid sitting in the same carriage with her mistress, and supporting her when fatigued, and last, though not least, we should not meet with a numerous mixed breed springing up every where from the union of the two races.

We must seek then for other causes of so general and powerful a nature as to be capable of influencing almost equally the opinions of thirteen millions of men. We well know that the abolition of villeinage and serfdom has never enabled the immediate descendants of freed-men, however rich, talented, and individually meritorious, to intermarry and be received on a footing of perfect equality with the best families of their country, or with that class on which their fathers were recently dependent. If in Europe there had been some indelible mark of ancestral degradation, some livery, handed down indefinitely from one generation to another, like the colour of the African, there is no saying how long the most galling disabilities of the villein would have survived the total abolition by law of personal servitude. But, fortunately, in Western Europe, the slaves belonged to the same race as their masters, whereas, in the United States, the negro cannot throw



off the livery which betrays to the remotest posterity the low condition of his forefathers.

There are Indian reservations, and I often asked why there should not be also negro reservations, or large territories set apart for free blacks, where they might form independent states or communities. It would be proper to select those districts where the climate is insalubrious to Europeans, but where the blacks are perfectly healthy. I was assured that no scheme could be more Utopian—that the negroes, if left to themselves, would abandon the cultivation of sugar, cotton, and all the crops most appropriate to such lands. All this I can conceive; but my friends went on to object that the negroes would soon sink into savage life, and make marauding expeditions beyond their frontier. I have no doubt that if the two parties were left without a powerful check, some attempt would soon be made at territorial encroachments, but it is easy to foresee which party would be the formidable aggressor.

*Philad  
pend  
—D  
ficien  
ecuti  
Faith  
veran  
good  
ican  
ress o*

*Phi*

ING to  
present  
there n  
ter, to  
here th  
edited  
taining  
Union,  
whether  
and ad  
slight h  
head, an  
good as  
them ba  
might h  
It ofte  
cles of sr  
venders



## CHAPTER XI.

*Philadelphia.—Financial Crisis.—Payment of State Dividends suspended.—General Distress and private Losses of the Americans.—Debt of Pennsylvania.—Public Works.—Direct Taxes.—Deficient Revenue.—Bad Faith and Confiscation.—Irresponsible Executive.—Loan refused by European Capitalists in 1842.—Good Faith of Congress during the War of 1812-14.—Effects of Universal Suffrage.—Fraudulent Voting.—Aliens.—Solvency and good Faith of the Majority of the States.—Confidence of American Capitalists.—Reform of the Electoral Body.—General Progress of Society, and Prospects of the Republic.*

*Philadelphia, January to March, 1842.*—WISHING to borrow some books at a circulating library, I presented several dollar notes as a deposit. At home there might have been a ringing of coin upon the counter, to ascertain whether it was true or counterfeit; here the shopwoman referred to a small pamphlet, re-edited "semi-monthly," called a "Detector," and containing an interminable list of banks in all parts of the Union, with information as to their present condition, whether solvent or not, and whether paying in specie, and adding a description of "spurious notes." After a slight hesitation, the perplexed librarian shook her head, and declaring her belief that my notes were as good as any others, said, if I would promise to take them back again on my return, and pay her in cash, I might have the volumes.

It often happened that when we offered to buy articles of small value in shops, or fruit in the market, the venders declined to have any dealings with us, unless



we paid in specie. They remarked that their change might in a few days be worth more than our paper. Many farmers and gardeners are ceasing to bring their produce to market, although the crops are very abundant, and prices are rising higher and higher, as if the city was besieged. My American friends, anxious that I should not be a loser, examined all my dollar notes, and persuaded me, before I set out on my travels, to convert them into gold, at a discount of eight per cent. In less than four weeks after this transaction, there was a general return to cash payments, and the four banks by which the greater part of my paper had been issued, all failed.

A parallel might perhaps be found for a crash of this kind in the commercial and financial history of England, or at least in some of her colonies, Australia, for example, where the unbounded facility afforded to a new country of borrowing the superabundant capital of an old one, has caused a sudden rise in the value of lands, houses, and goods, and promoted the maddest speculations. But an event now occurred of a different and far more serious nature. One morning we were told that the Governor of Pennsylvania had come in great haste from Harrisburg, in consequence of the stoppage of one of the banks in the city, in which were lodged the funds intended for the payment of dividends on state bonds, due in a few days. On this emergency he endeavoured to persuade other banks to advance the money, but in vain; such was the general alarm, and feeling of insecurity. The consequent necessity of a delay of payment was announced, and many native holders of stock expressed to me their fears, that although they might obtain the dividend then actually

CHAP. XL  
due.  
the  
resou  
and  
of P  
class  
our o  
It  
sione  
previ  
tired  
bar, o  
their  
are le  
have  
classes  
notion  
these  
in fact  
and of  
rities.  
adelphi  
petition  
tion of  
that th  
\$800,000  
preciati  
compell  
their de  
The  
\$8,000,000  
held by  
belonged

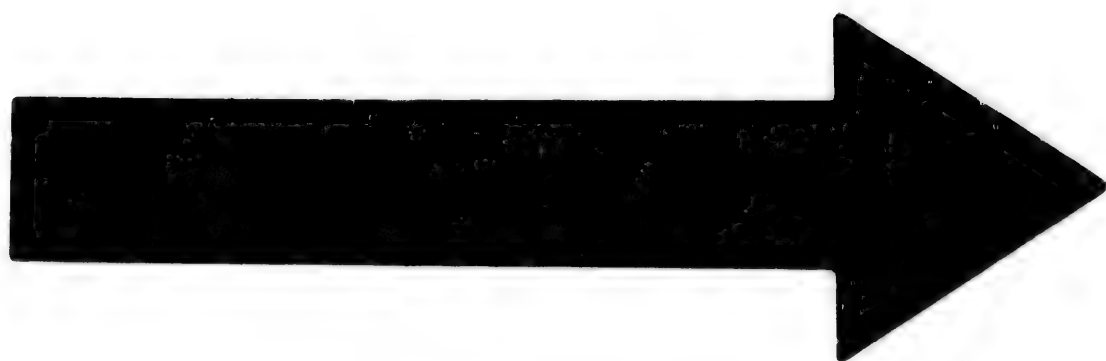


due, it might be long before they received another. At the same time they declared their conviction, that the resources of the State, if well managed, were ample; and that, if it depended on the more affluent merchants of Philadelphia, and the richer portion of the middle class generally, to impose and pay the taxes, the honour of Pennsylvania would not be compromised.

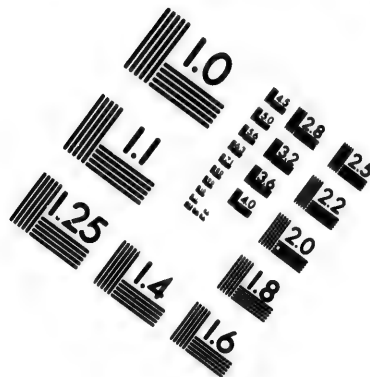
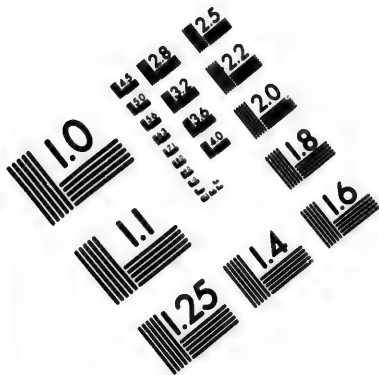
It was painful to witness the ruin and distress occasioned by this last blow, following, as it did, so many previous disasters. Men advanced in years, and retired from active life, after success in business, or at the bar, or after military service, too old to migrate with their families to the West, and begin the world again, are left destitute; many widows and single women have lost their all, and great numbers of the poorer classes are deprived of their savings. An erroneous notion prevails in England that the misery created by these bankruptcies is confined chiefly to foreigners, but, in fact, many of the poorest citizens of Pennsylvania, and of other States, had invested money in these securities. In 1844, or two years after my stay in Philadelphia, the Savings' Bank of New York presented a petition to the legislature at Harrisburg for a resumption of payment of dividends, in which it was stated that their bank then held 300,000 dollars, and had held 800,000, but was obliged to sell 500,000 at a great depreciation, in order to pay the claimants, who were compelled by the distress of the times to withdraw their deposits.

The debt of Pennsylvania amounted to about 8,000,000*l.* sterling, nearly two thirds of which was held by British owners; and as a majority of these belonged to that party which always indulged the most

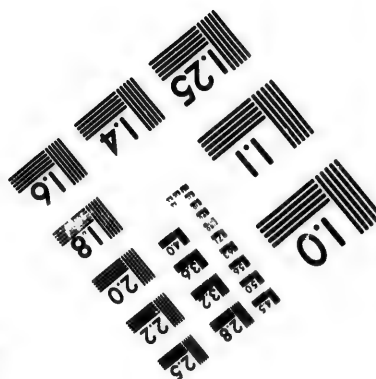
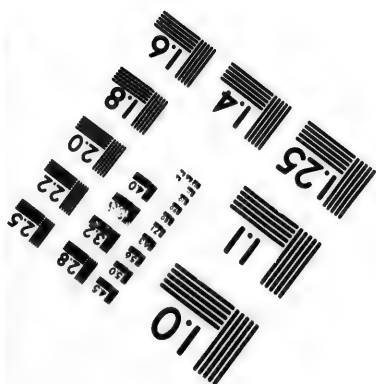
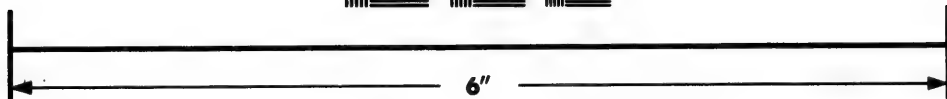
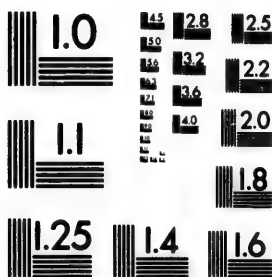








# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**



18 20 22 25  
E E E E E

10 01  
E E E E E



sanguine hopes of the prospects of the American republic, and estimated most highly the private worth of the people and their capacity for self-government, they suffered doubly, being disappointed alike in their pecuniary speculations and their political views. It was natural, therefore, that a re-action of feeling should embitter their minds, and incline them to magnify and exaggerate the iniquity of that conduct which had at once impugned the soundness of their judgment, and inflicted a severe injury on their fortunes. Hence, not a few of them, confounding together the different States, have represented all the Americans as little better than swindlers, who, having defrauded Europe of many millions sterling, were enjoying tranquilly and with impunity the fruits of their knavery. The public works executed with foreign capital are supposed by many in England to yield a large profit on the outlay, which is not the case in any one of the delinquent States.

The loss or temporary suspension of the interest even of one third of the above-mentioned debt, in a country like Pennsylvania, where there is a small amount of capital to invest, and that belonging chiefly to persons incapable of exerting themselves to make money, a country where property is so much divided, and where such extensive failures had preceded this crisis, inflicts a far deeper wound on the happiness of the community, than the defalcation of a much larger sum in Great Britain would occasion.

When we inquire into the circumstances which have involved the Pennsylvanians in their present difficulties, we shall find that, disgraceful as their conduct has been, their iniquity is neither so great, nor the pros-

pect  
mig  
Pen  
that  
mar  
the c  
the  
their  
of go  
and,  
tax o  
lars  
not u  
jority

It  
borro  
she in  
purpo  
was h  
the e  
woul  
neces  
payin  
thoug  
unexp  
rious  
a cha  
dollar  
which  
Gover  
then  
these



pect of their affairs righting themselves so desperate, as might at first sight be supposed. Every holder of Pennsylvanian bonds is undoubtedly entitled to assume that "there's something rotten in the state of Denmark," and to observe to any traveller who extenuates the delinquency of the State, "the better you think of the people, the worse opinion you must entertain of their institutions." How, under a representative form of government, can such events occur in time of peace, and, moreover, in a state so wealthy, that an income tax of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. would yield the two millions of dollars required,\* and where the interest on the bonds was not usurious nor unusual in America—unless the majority of the electors be corrupt or grossly ignorant?

It appears that in the year 1831, when Pennsylvania borrowed a large sum for making railways and canals, she imposed direct taxes for seven years, for the express purpose of regularly paying the interest of her debt. It was hoped, from the experience of New York, that, at the expiration of that term of years, the public works would become sufficiently profitable to render it unnecessary to renew the tax. The inhabitants went on paying until the year 1836, when the government thought itself justified in remitting the burden, on being unexpectedly enriched by several large sums from various sources. In that year they received for granting a charter to the U. S. Bank of Pennsylvania 2,600,000 dollars, and 2,800,000 more for their share of monies which had accumulated in the treasury of the Federal Government, arising out of the sale of public lands, and then divided among the States. It was calculated that these funds would last for three years, and that the

\* Tucker's Progress of the U. S. 1843, p. 210.



public works would by that time yield a revenue sufficient to defray the interest of the sum laid out on executing them.

That the legislature should have seized the first opportunity of relieving their constituents from the direct taxes will astonish no one who has perused the printed paper of the tax-assessor in Pennsylvania, which every one is required to fill up. The necessity of ascertaining the means of persons possessed of small property renders the questions exceedingly minute and inquisitorial. From a variety of others, I extract the following:—"What is the amount of your monies loaned on mortgage, and the debts due to you by solvent debtors?" "What interest do they pay?" "What shares do you hold in any bank or company in any other State?" "How many pleasure carriages do you keep?" "How many watches do you own?—are they gold or silver?" and so forth.

Soon after the ill-judged remission of this tax, a great combination of circumstances led to over-trading, and the most extravagant schemes of money-making. The United States' Bank, during its controversy with President Jackson, had accumulated a large amount of specie, and lent it out most lavishly and imprudently; and when it obtained its new charter from Pennsylvania, it again promoted loans of all kinds, which gave an inordinate stimulus to speculation. Some of the great London banks, at the same time, gave credit to a prodigious amount, often without sufficient caution; and when they were compelled to withdraw this credit suddenly, they had not time to distinguish which of their creditors were worthy of confidence. A great fire in New York, in 1835, had annihilated property to the

valu  
Ban  
Gov  
gran  
of ne  
Unio  
of au  
1841  
sylva  
crisis

It  
unde  
broug  
of an  
duct  
these  
exper  
and e  
enue,  
last w  
of the  
In wh  
for?  
borrov  
The p  
laying  
incurr  
bad fa  
from t  
The  
ficienc  
best of  
compos



value of six millions sterling. After the United States' Bank had ceased to be connected with the Federal Government, many other States, besides Pennsylvania, granted charters to banks, which led to an over-issue of notes, and a hot-bed forcing of trade throughout the Union. Then came, in 1839, the miserable expedient of authorizing banks to suspend cash payments, and in 1841, the stoppage of the great U. S. Bank of Pennsylvania, followed by a general panic and financial crisis.

It is necessary to reflect on these events, in order to understand how the insolvency of Pennsylvania was brought about ; but no American writer or statesman of any character pretends to excuse or palliate the conduct of her legislature in 1839, 1840, and 1841. In these years, there was an actual excess in the ordinary expenditure of the State for the purposes of government and education, over the receipts from all sources of revenue, except the public works. The proceeds of these last were appropriated to the payment of the interest of the debt, for which they were lamentably insufficient. In what manner were these various deficits provided for? Not by the imposition of new burdens, but by borrowing, and adding annually to the public debt. The party in power shrank from the unpopularity of laying on new taxes ; and the slight share of discredit incurred by them at the time, for this glaring act of bad faith, places in a strong light the mischief arising from the small power here confided to the executive.

The Governor tells the Houses that there is a deficiency in the revenue, and they are left to make the best of it, and appoint a committee of ways and means, composed usually of members very incompetent as



financiers. It is for them to consider what is to be done; there is no experienced official Minister of Finance, no chancellor of the exchequer, whose duty it is to come forward with a budget, and declare, like the English minister in 1842:—"Here is an income-tax, to which you must submit, or we resign." The jealousy on the part of the people, and their fears of the abuses of a strong executive, have induced them to circumscribe its powers so much, that they have virtually deprived it of all responsibility. In their attempt to avoid one evil, they have fallen into another as great, if not greater.

The resources of the country were so paralyzed in 1842, amidst the general wreck, and crash of commercial houses and banks, that the suspension of the payment of one or two State dividends had become unavoidable; but the non-payment even of a fraction of the interest in 1843-4, during a period of reviving prosperity and sound currency, reflects no small disgrace on the people, or discredit on the nature of their institutions.

It appears that in the year 1841, before the regular payment of dividends was suspended, a new property tax was imposed, which came into play in 1842, and yielded to the State 486,000 dollars; and 558,000 more in 1843, and an additional sum in 1844, of 755,000 dollars. These returns being inadequate, a new tax was laid on in 1844, with more stringent regulations for enforcing its collection, and it is now expected (December, 1844) that the public creditor, whose arrears of unpaid dividends have, in the mean time, been funded, will receive his due. But how many bondholders have been already obliged to sell out, while



others are dead and gone, so that restitution to all becomes impossible; and thus, to a certain extent, an irretrievable act of confiscation has been perpetrated!

Let us now consider how far these evils can be attributed to causes of so general, lasting, and deep-seated a nature, as to have justified the monied men of England and the Continent, in 1842, in the distrust manifested by them of the good faith of the whole Union. Such a want of confidence was displayed when the agent of the Federal Government failed to obtain in Europe a loan of a few millions sterling offered on very advantageous terms.

On referring to the history of the United States, during the present century, we find that in the course of the war of 1812—1814, the nation had incurred a debt about equal to that now owing (1844) by all the delinquent States. A proposal was twice made in Congress to discontinue the payment of dividends to the English creditors, on the ground that they were enemies. On both occasions, the proposal was rejected, as dishonest, and with marked expressions of disapprobation; at a time when direct taxes levied by the Federal Government pressed heavy on the people. The debt went on increasing after the close of the war, but was at length entirely paid off in 1835. These transactions raised the character of American securities throughout Europe; and the altered tone of feeling evinced in 1842 is the more remarkable, as it occurred in a time of profound peace, when there was no immediate anticipation of war, and when it was well known that between the years 1812 and 1842, the wealth and territory of the confederacy had increased enormously, and the population more than doubled. In fact, the ad-



vance in the number of the inhabitants in this short interval was from eight to eighteen millions; the excess alone amounting to more than the population of all England at the commencement of the present century.

It cannot be denied that the course of events during the thirty years above alluded to has afforded grounds of anxiety to those who admire republican institutions and to every well-wisher of the prosperity of the Union. They who would make a permanent investment of money in U. S. stock must anticipate the possibility of war, and of a consequent reduction of revenue from the customs. If it then became necessary to lay on direct taxes, we have to consider, whether a majority of all the citizens would be likely to evince as much repugnance to pay their dividends punctually to foreign and domestic creditors as the Pennsylvanians and Marylanders have recently shown. If it has required several years to rouse the electors of these ancient States to a sense of their duty and honour, would the consciences of the new settlers in ruder and less advanced communities, constituting a large portion of the Union, be more sensitive?

As politicians, no people are so prone to give way to groundless fears and despondency respecting the prospects of affairs in America as the English, partly because they know little of the condition of society there, and partly from their own well-founded conviction, that a near approach to universal suffrage at home would lead to anarchy and insecurity of property. To divide the land equally among all, to make an "equitable adjustment" of the national debt, or, in other words, to repudiate, are propositions gravely discussed at Chartist



meetings, and even embodied in numerous signed petitions to parliament. The majority even of the democratic party in the U. S. would probably assent to the opinion, that in England, where there is so much actual want, where one tenth of the population, or 1,500,000 persons, receive parochial relief, where education has made such slow progress among the poor, and where there is no outlet in the Far West, no safety-valve for the escape of the redundant inhabitants, it would be most dangerous to entrust every adult male with the right of voting. Yet in America they think the experiment a safe one, or even contend that it has succeeded. But not a few of the opposite party, however inexpedient and useless they may think it to agitate the question, agree with the majority of European politicians in considering that it has lowered and deteriorated the character of the electoral body.

It is undeniable that the rapidity with which the native population has multiplied throughout the Union, and still more the influx of aliens into every State, has had a tendency to cause the whole country to resemble a new colony, rather than an old and long-established nation. Not only many new Territories and States, but even some of the old ones, such as New York and Pennsylvania, contain so much unoccupied land that they are full of adventurers and speculators from other parts of America, and of new-comers from Europe, speaking different languages, often cherishing foreign prejudices, and disturbing the equilibrium of native parties, founded on broad and distinct views of home policy. I have already remarked, that, on the southern frontier of the State of New York (p. 59.), I saw the native forest yielding as fast to the axe of the new



settler, as if we had penetrated to the Far West, or the back woods of Canada. When we turn to her northern confines, we learn from the Reports of the Geological Surveyors employed by government in 1837, and subsequent years, that in Essex County and elsewhere they had recourse to Indian guides in a pathless wilderness, encountered panthers and moose-deer, found the beaver still lingering in some streams, saw lakes before undescribed, and measured the height of mountains for the first time. During my short sojourn in the metropolis of that State, I witnessed, among other illustrations of the heterogeneous composition of its people, a grand Repeal demonstration, an endless procession of Irish parading the streets, with portraits of O'Connell emblazoned on their banners, and various mottoes, implying that their thoughts were occupied with party questions of British, not of American politics. A large number of these aliens have, contrary to old usage, been of late years invested with electoral rights; and candidates for places in the magistracy, or the legislature, are degraded by paying court to their sympathies and ignorant prejudices. This temptation is too strong to be resisted; for, small as may be their numbers when compared with the native voters, they often turn the scale in an election where the great constitutional parties are very nearly balanced.

In addition to some of these evils, Pennsylvania labours under the disadvantage of being jointly occupied by two races, those of British, and those of German extraction. The latter are spoken of by the Anglo-Americans as the Bæotians of the land. They appeared to me industrious and saving, very averse to speculation, but certainly wanting in that habit of



identifying themselves with the acts of their government, which can alone give to the electors under a representative system a due sense of responsibility. Some of them talked of their public works as of commercial projects which had failed; and when I remarked that, unlike the English, whose debts were incurred by carrying on wars, they were at least reaping some advantage from their expenditure, they assured me I was mistaken—that such cheap and rapid means of locomotion were positively injurious, by facilitating migrations to the West, and preventing a country with a “sparse” population from filling up. For this reason, their lands had not risen in value as they ought to have done. They protested that they had always been opposed to railways and canals; and that for every useful line adopted, there was sure to be another unnecessary canal or railway made, in consequence of “log-rolling” in their legislature. The representatives, they say, of each section of the country, would only consent to vote money, if they could obtain a promise that an equal sum should be laid out in their own district, and to this end some new and uncalled-for scheme had to be invented. This kind of jobbing they compare to log-rolling in the back settlements, where the thinly-scattered inhabitants assemble and run up a log-cabin in a single day for the new-comer, receiving, in their turn, some corresponding service, whenever the union of numbers is required.

From all I could learn, I felt inclined to believe, that as soon as these Germans were convinced that they really owed the money they would pay it. There are, however, a multitude of European immigrants who have recently been admitted to take part in the elec-



tions by shortening the term of years required for naturalization. It is also notorious that, owing to the neglect of registration, many aliens vote fraudulently, and others several times over at the same poll, in various disguises.

To those English politicians who are not accustomed to look with favouring eyes on democratic institutions in general, the task of reforming such abuses appears hopeless. By what eloquence, they ask, can we persuade an ignorant multitude to abdicate power, if we have once taken the false step of conferring sovereignty upon them? At every election they must become more and more demoralized. It is proverbially difficult for truth to reach the ears of kings, and what matters it whether the sovereign consist of one or of many individuals? The flattery of demagogues is not less gross and servile than that of courtiers in the palaces of princes. The candidates for popular favour, when appealing to the passions of the vulgar, their vanity, pride, and national jealousy, never administer their honied drugs in homœopathic doses. By what arts or powers of oratory can we hope to persuade the least educated portion of the community, when they have once obtained by their numbers a preponderating influence, that they ought to be disfranchised?—that the more wealthy citizens, who have leisure for study and reflection, will shrink from the ordeal of contested elections, if they must defer to vulgar prejudices, and coarser feelings;—in a word, that some must be content to break stones on the road and dig canals, instead of choosing lawgivers, and instructing them how to vote?

Nothing is more easy than to draw so discouraging a picture of the dangers of universal suffrage, that we



are led to despair of the republic, and deem it far more wonderful that Ohio should pay than that Mississippi should repudiate. But when we take a nearer view of recent events, and observe what is now going on in the U. S., we discover grounds for viewing their affairs in a very different and far more cheerful light. In the first place, touching financial matters, it is satisfactory to know that, when the Central Government failed, in 1842, to contract a loan in Europe, the American capitalists came forward without hesitation, and advanced the money on the terms which had been rejected. The new stock rose at once above par, and has since become saleable in Europe at a premium of 16 per cent. The Americans have, also, made large purchases, in the years 1843 and 1844, of the bonds of Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, and even Pennsylvania; and had there been more capital seeking investment in the U. S., their securities generally would have changed hands to a greater extent.

This confidence is not based on any principles of pure patriotism, but on cool calculation and a knowledge that all but nine out of twenty-nine States and Territories are either free from debt, or have been true to their engagements. The only State which has formally disowned or repudiated a portion of her debt, amounting to about one million sterling, is Mississippi. She does not deny having received the money, or a part of it, but has the effrontery to allege, as ground for non-payment, that her agents exceeded their powers, and defrauded her. Michigan, also, and Florida, have held language somewhat bordering on repudiation; but the other States in arrear have promised to pay, and some of them are exerting themselves in earnest to



accomplish the object. Upon the whole, the interest of nearly half the money borrowed has been regularly paid; and when we recollect that no small part of it was lent to new and poor States or Territories, where society is still in a rude, half-formed, and migratory condition, and that the money lent rashly and incautiously was spent, as might have been expected improvidently, we must view their delinquency with some indulgence, and assign a share, at least, of the blame to the lender.

The state of Ohio has always punctually discharged the interest of her debt by direct taxes imposed for that special purpose, although there has been a deficit from the beginning on the proceeds of her public works. She is of recent origin, and her growth has been more rank and luxuriant than that of any other State of the Union. An influx of illiterate Irish, Welsh and Westphalian settlers, has tended to lower the educational qualifications of her electors, considered as a whole; but she came of a good New-England stock, which, like the philosopher's stone, has converted much of her baser metal into gold.

Any foreigner who has hastily embraced the notion that a suffrage virtually universal must be incompatible in the U. S. with order, obedience to the laws, security of property, a high degree of civilization, and the most unimpeachable public credit, has only to make himself acquainted with the present condition of the New-England States, especially Massachusetts, and he will feel satisfied that the charge may be refuted. It is a wholly different question whether so democratic a constitution is equally fitted for the exigencies of many other parts of the Union, where the mass of the



people are less advanced in knowledge and wealth, where the force of public opinion and sympathy is checked, and the free communication of thought impeded, by distinctness of races and of language.

Although the political constitutions of the several States are all formed on one great model, there exists considerable diversity in the details of their organization. The qualifications of the electors and legislators are not the same in all, nor the modes of appointment or powers of the Executive. There seems, however, a nearer approach to uniformity, than can be consistent with the very different degrees of social advancement and mental cultivation to which these independent States have attained.

To defects and blemishes of this kind, the leading statesmen in America are not blind, and both the evils and their remedies are subjects of the freest discussion. In many of the newspapers, and in the monthly and quarterly journals of both parties, in public lectures and speeches at elections, we find, during the last three years, the conduct of repudiating or defaulting States unsparingly condemned. The most earnest appeals are made to the sense of justice and honour, to the religious feelings or national pride, of their hearers or readers; they also tell them that it is their interest to pay, and that, if they cannot be moved by higher motives, they should remember that "Honesty is the best policy." The frequency and earnestness of these exhortations sufficiently prove the conviction of the writers and orators that a reform may be brought about. The mischief that has occurred is sometimes adduced as a proof that education and habits of temperance, although they have made great progress during the last



fifteen years, have not yet been carried far enough. A more strict registration of the electors for the sake of putting an end to fraudulent voting, and the exclusion of foreigners from the electoral body, by lengthening the term of naturalization, are measures warmly insisted upon by the party opposed to the extremes of democracy—a party which, so late as the year 1840, obtained a majority in a presidential election, when two millions and a half of persons gave their votes. sanguine hopes are entertained that the most respectable members of the democratic party will also join in effecting reforms in the electoral system so obviously desirable. It is not simply the fair fame and happiness of eighteen millions of souls which are at stake; for during the lifetime of thousands now taking part in public affairs, or before the close of the present century, the population of the U. S. will probably amount, even on a moderate estimate, to no less than eighty millions.\*

\* Tucker's Progress of the U. S., p. 106.



## CHAPTER XII.

*New York City.—Geology.—Distribution of Erratic Blocks in Long Island.—Residence in New York.—Effects on Society of increased Intercourse of distant States.—Separation of the Capital and Metropolis.—Climate.—Geology of the Taconic Mountains.—Stratum of Plumbago and Anthracite in the Mica Schist of Worcester.—Theory of its Origin.—Lectures for the Working Classes.—Fossil Foot-prints of Birds in Red Sandstone.—Mount Holyoke.—Visit to the Island of Martha's Vineyard.—Fossil Walrus.—Indians*

*New York, March, 1842.*—THE island on which New York stands is composed of gneiss, as are the cliffs on the left bank of the Hudson, for many miles above. At Hoboken, on the opposite side of the river, cliffs are seen of serpentine, a rock which appears to be subordinate to the gneiss, as in many parts of Norway and Sweden. All these formations, as well as the syenite of Staten Island, correspond very closely with European rocks of the same order.

Long Island is about 130 miles in length, and the town of Brooklyn, on its western extremity, may be considered as a suburb of New York. This low island is every where covered with an enormous mass of drift or diluvium, and is the most southern point in the United States, where I saw large erratic blocks in great numbers. Excavations recently made in the Navy Yard at Brooklyn have exposed the boulder formation to the depth of thirty feet; the lowest portion there seen consisting of red clay and loam, with boulders of trap and sandstone, is evidently the detritus of the New



Red Sandstone formation of New Jersey. This mass, in the sections where I observed it, was about eighteen feet thick, and rudely stratified. Above it lay an unstratified grey loam, partly of coarse and partly of fine materials, with boulders and angular blocks of gneiss, syenitic greenstone, and other crystalline rocks, dispersed at random through the loamy base, the whole being covered with loam eight feet thick. One angular block of gneiss, which I measured, was thirteen feet long, by nine in breadth, and five feet high, but masses still larger have been met with, and broken up by gunpowder. Mr. Redfield, who accompanied me to Brooklyn, suggested that the inferior red drift may have been accumulated first when the red sandstone of the neighbouring country was denuded, and that afterwards, when the land was submerged to a greater depth, and when the gneiss and hypogene mountains of the highlands alone protruded above the waters, the upper drift with its erratics may have been thrown down. I am well disposed to adopt this view, because it coincides with conclusions to which I was led by independent evidence, after examining the districts around Lakes Erie and Ontario, viz. that the drift was deposited during the successive submergence of a region which had been previously elevated and denuded, and which had already acquired its present leading geographical features and superficial configuration.

At South Brooklyn, I saw a fine example of stratified drift, consisting of beds of clay, sand, and gravel, which were contorted and folded as if by violent lateral pressure, while beds below of similar composition, and equally flexible, remained horizontal. These appearances, which exactly agree with those seen in the drift

of S  
well  
the  
agro  
of sh  
arran  
or m  
inferi

Mr  
portion  
gard  
Long  
about  
tremi  
gneiss  
have  
and, i  
opposi  
of suc  
respon  
that ri  
Haver  
and th  
ern en  
pentine  
talline  
imined  
travell  
manne  
the Sw  
or gneis  
Alps w



of Scotland or the North of Europe, generally accord well with the theory which attributes the pressure to the stranding of ice islands, which, when they run aground, are known to push before them large mounds of shingle and sand, and must often alter greatly the arrangement of strata forming the upper part of shoals, or mud-banks and sand-banks in the sea, while the inferior portions of the same remain unmoved.

Mr. Mather, in his Report on the geology of this portion of New York,\* states an interesting fact in regard to the arrangement of the boulder formation on Long Island, which, as before mentioned, extends for about 130 miles east and west. At its eastern extremity the boulders are of such kinds of granite, gneiss, mica, slate, greenstone, and syenite, as may have come across the Sound from parts of Rhode Island, immediately to the north. Farther westward, opposite the mouth of the Connecticut River, they are of such varieties of gneiss and hornblende slate as correspond with the rocks of the region through which that river passes. Still farther west, or opposite New Haven, they consist of red sandstone and conglomerate, and the trap of that country; and lastly, at the western end, adjoining the city of New York, we find serpentine, red sandstone, and various granitic and crystalline rocks, which have come from the district lying immediately to the north. This distribution of the travelled fragments will remind every geologist of the manner in which distinct sets of erratics are lodged on the Swiss Jura, each set, whether of granite, marble, or gneiss, answering in composition to those parts of the Alps which are nearest and immediately opposite, as if

\* Report for 1837, p. 88.



they had crossed the great valley of Switzerland, more than fifty miles broad, in a direction at right angles to its length. The Sound, which separates Long Island from the main land, is from five to twenty-five miles broad. The fragments have doubtless been transported by ice ; but we must suppose them to have been floated by ice-islands in the sea, as there are no high mountains in this part of North America from which glaciers can have descended after the continent had acquired nearly its present shape and altitude.

We spent several weeks at New York, and soon found ourselves at home in the society of persons to some of whom we had letters of introduction from near relatives in England, and others whom we had met at distant places in the course of our tour. So many American citizens migrate from north to south for the sake of mild winters, or attendance on Congress, or the supreme courts of law at Washington, or congregate in large watering places during the summer, or have children or brothers settled in the Far West ; everywhere there is so much intercourse, personal or epistolary, between scientific and literary men in remote states, who have often received their university education far from home, that in each new city where we sojourn our American friends and acquaintances seem to know something of each other, and to belong to the same set in society. The territorial extent and political independence of the different States of the Union remind the traveller rather of the distinct nations of Europe than of the different counties of a single kingdom like England ; but the population has spread so fast from certain centres, especially from New England, and the facilities of communication by railway and

steam  
rapidly  
a pop  
and  
the th  
only t  
of the  
comm  
and t  
mover  
ing de  
laws, a  
Dutch  
dang  
pears  
than f

I di  
whose  
ton Irv  
about  
which  
uralists  
expens  
I often  
the tow  
cause i  
of mind  
govern  
in arran  
have b  
sulted i  
having  
deed, w



steam-boat are so great, and are always improving so rapidly, that the twenty-six republics of 1842, having a population of seventeen millions, are more united, and belong more thoroughly to one nation, than did the thirteen States in 1776, when their numbers were only three millions. In spite of the continued decline of the federal authority, and the occasional conflict of commercial interests between the North and South, and the violent passions excited by the anti-slavery movement, the old colonial prejudices have been softening down from year to year, the English language, laws, and literature, have pervaded more and more the Dutch, German, and French settlements, and the danger of the dismemberment of the confederacy appears to all reflecting politicians less imminent now than formerly.

I dined with Mr. Astor, now far advanced in years, whose name is well known to the readers of Washington Irving's "Astoria." He informed me that he was about to found a large public library in New York, which I rejoice to hear, as the scientific men and naturalists of this country can rarely afford to purchase expensive European works with numerous illustrations. I often regretted, during my short residence here, that the town of Albany, 150 miles distant, is destined, because it is the capital, to possess the splendid collection of minerals, rocks, and fossils obtained during the late government survey. The surveyors are now employed in arranging these treasures in a museum, which would have been far more useful and more frequently consulted if placed in the midst of this wealthy metropolis, having a population of 300,000 souls. Foreigners, indeed, who have only visited New York for commercial



purposes, may imagine that all the inhabitants are exclusively engrossed with trade and money-making; but there is a college here, and many large and flourishing literary and scientific institutions. I received numerous invitations to deliver lectures on geology, but had scarcely time to finish one short course when I was reminded, by the breaking up of winter, that I could resume my operations in the field.

It was now the second week of April, and already the willows on "the Battery" were putting forth their yellowish-green leaves. The air was as warm as in an English summer, although a few days before the ground had been covered with snow. Such sudden changes are trying to many constitutions; and we are told that if we staid a second year in the United States we should feel the influence of the climate, and begin to lose that freshness of colour which marks the newly-arrived Englishman. The greater sallowness of complexion here is attributed to the want of humidity in the air; and we ought to congratulate ourselves that there is no lack of that ingredient in the atmosphere of Great Britain. We continue to be surprised at the clearness of the skies, and the number of fine days and bright star-light nights, on this side of the Atlantic.

*April 12, 1842.*—Left New York, and ascended the North River to Hudson City, to observe there the transition or Silurian slates and limestones. These rocks have undergone so much disturbance that I was unable to satisfy myself—perhaps from want of more time for observation—whether the alleged unconformability of the fossiliferous limestone to the black slate is real or only apparent, and owing to shifts in the position of the strata. From Hudson City I followed

the li  
what  
may b  
of the  
differ  
inant  
crystal  
in the  
mary.  
phic, b  
fucoids  
been c  
Rogers  
me hig  
these h  
Dr. En  
are mor  
est foss  
they ar  
Silurian  
rangem  
and org  
theory;  
that th  
series re  
which  
system.  
either t  
United S  
the Nere  
division  
of this  
the paleo



the line of the railway by Chester and Westfield, over what is called the Taconic range of mountains. They may be considered, geographically, as a continuation of the Green Mountains of Vermont; and they do not differ greatly in their geological structure, the predominant rocks being gneiss, mica schist, talcose slate, and crystalline limestone, the larger portion of which would in the ordinary nomenclature of geology be called primary. They have, however, been termed metamorphic, because in some of the associated slates traces of fucoids and vermiform bodies, called *Nereites*, have been discovered. Professors Hitchcock and H. D. Rogers have expressed an opinion, which appeared to me highly probable after a cursory examination of these hills, that they consist of altered Silurian strata. Dr. Emmons, on the other hand, contends that they are more ancient than the lowest sandstone of the oldest fossiliferous group of New York,—in a word, that they are sedimentary strata of an era anterior to the Silurian, in a metamorphic state. The order of arrangement of the masses, their mineral constituents and organic remains, are appealed to in support of this theory; and several sections are considered as proving that the most ancient sandstones of the New York series rest unconformably on the rocks in question, to which Dr. Emmons gives the name of the Taconic system. But the fossils are so few, and so analogous either to species found in the Silurian strata in the United States or in those now generally referred, like the *Nereites* (a species of annelides?), to the inferior division of that group in Great Britain, that the claim of this Taconic group to an independent place among the paleozoic formations seems still very questionable.



I went afterwards to examine the mica schist of Worcester, in Massachusetts, to the east of the Taconic range and of the Connecticut River, and forty-five miles due west of Boston. I found, interstratified with the mica schist and associated clay-slate of this place, a regular bed of plumbaginous anthracite, or impure graphite, portions of which give a streak on paper like a lead pencil. It has been used for making pencils, while a part of the stratum has been worked for coal, but apparently without profit, as the mine is now abandoned. The mica schist contains garnets and asbestos, and is much impregnated with carbonaceous matter. I searched in vain for vegetable impressions in the plumbaginous anthracite, which was in part iridescent, like coal, and so much resembled some of the earthy anthracites which I soon afterwards saw on the borders of Massachusetts and Rhode Island, at Wrentham, Cumberland, Attleborough, and Mansfield, that I feel strongly inclined to believe that the Worcester beds, however crystalline they may be, are no other than carboniferous rocks in an altered or metamorphic state. At the various localities last mentioned I found in the carbonaceous slates accompanying the anthracite the most common coal plants, such as *Pecopteris plumosa*, *Neuropteris flexuosa*, *Sphenophyllum*, *Calamites*, &c. Although the associated strata were not in a crystalline condition, they and the coal were occasionally traversed with veins of quartz, like the plumbaginous bed at Worcester; and there are many places in Rhode Island and Massachusetts, pointed out by Dr. C. T. Jackson and Professor Hitchcock, in which the carboniferous and old red sandstone rocks pass into mica schist, and other hypogene rocks,

especial  
and sy  
glomer  
been t  
which

I ha  
from th  
ern por  
ingredie  
original  
proporti  
myself  
is bitum  
the qua  
friend L  
the rest  
Frostbu  
chain, v  
turbanc  
to be 9  
thracite  
before a  
about 5

In th  
proportio  
being a

\* These  
me by the  
ment given  
ferences, th  
seen that  
the gaseous  
For details  
by the auth



especially in the neighbourhood of masses of granite and syenite. In some cases the pebbles of the conglomerate remain distinct, while the shaly base has been turned into a well-characterised mica schist, of which I obtained specimens.

I have already mentioned (p. 72.) that in crossing from the west of the Alleghany mountains to the eastern portion of the Appalachian coal-field the volatile ingredients (oxygen, hydrogen, and nitrogen) of the original coal bear continually a smaller and smaller proportion to the carbon. In the specimens which I myself obtained from Pomeroy, Ohio, where the coal is bituminous, and where the strata are undisturbed, the quantity of gaseous matter has been found by my friend Dr. Percy to be in the proportion of 19 per cent., the rest being carbon and ash. 2dly. In the coal at Frostburg, in Maryland, in the midst of the Alleghany chain, where the strata have undergone but slight disturbance, the proportion of volatile matter was found to be  $9\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. 3dly. In the Pennsylvanian anthracite of the Lehigh and Mauch Chunk mines, before alluded to (p. 69.), the volatile ingredients are about 5 per cent.\*

In the plumbaginous anthracite of Worcester the proportion of volatile matter is about 3 per cent., there being a slight trace of nitrogen. I conceive that a

\* These results were obtained from an elaborate analysis made for me by the kindness of Dr. J. Percy of Birmingham, since the statement given at p. 72. was printed. They bear out the geological inferences, there referred to, of Professor H. D. Rogers; but it will be seen that the proportions of the chemical constituents differ greatly, the gaseous matter being only half the previously estimated quantity. For details of the analysis and manipulations, see Appendix to a paper by the author, in the *Journal of Geol. Soc.*, London, No. II. 1845.



more powerful action of those same plutonic causes (heat, and other subterranean agencies) which are capable of converting sedimentary into crystalline rocks may have expelled nearly all the gaseous ingredients from a stratum of coal or anthracite, and turned it into an impure plumbago, while the carboniferous grits and shales were changed into carbonaceous mica-schist, clay-slate, and quartzite. At Little Falls, on the Mohawk River, and elsewhere in the U. S., and at the Falls of Montmorency, and other places in Canada, I have seen the lowest Silurian strata resting unconformably on gneiss and other hypogene formations. But we ought not to be surprised on that account, if we find on the American continent, as in the Swiss Alps and other regions in Europe, strata containing plants of the coal-measures, or of still newer dates, which have acquired the hypogene or metamorphic structure. Near the Atlantic border of the United States, in particular, we should be prepared for such a discovery, for we know that those powerful movements which have given rise to the Appalachian chain, folding and dislocating the solid rocks for a breadth of 150, and a length of more than 1000 miles, and the injection into the eastern portion of the chain, of igneous rocks of the trappean and plutonic order, are phenomena posterior in date to the deposition of the American carboniferous strata. During so long a series of subterranean changes as are implied by these disturbances it may well have happened that considerable masses of the coal-bearing, as well as of more ancient paleozoic strata, should have assumed a crystalline texture.

At a small New England town in the Taconic hills above mentioned I was getting some travelling in-

struction  
tered w  
what I  
ply wa  
Ages.  
swered  
cents (  
he shou  
It refle  
educati  
ing clas  
the toi  
of this  
tures w  
cards in  
a cause  
among  
began  
ing mo  
pretens  
an ear  
Present  
the Ho  
topics.

*Apri*  
College  
vey of t  
me sev  
ported  
roundin  
those u  
and No  
raines"



structions at the bar of an inn, when a carpenter entered who had just finished his day's work, and asked what lecture would be given that evening. The reply was, Mr. N. on the Astronomy of the Middle Ages. He then inquired if it was gratis, and was answered in the negative, the price being twenty-five cents (or one shilling English); upon which he said he should go, and accordingly returned home to dress. It reflects no small credit on the national system of education in New England, that crowds of the labouring classes of both sexes should seek recreation, after the toils of the day are over, in listening to discourses of this kind. Among the most popular subjects of lectures which I saw announced in newspapers or placards in different towns and villages were 'Temperance, a cause which has made great progress of late years among Protestants as well as Catholics, and which began in the U. S. fifteen years before the corresponding movement in Great Britain; Phrenology, to the pretensions of which the Americans lend too credulous an ear; the History of the American Revolution; the Present State and Past History of China; Travels in the Holy Land; Meteorology, and a variety of other topics.

*April 15.*—Visited Professor Hitchcock at Amherst College, Massachusetts, by whom the geological survey of that State has been ably executed. He showed me several ridges and large rounded hillocks of transported materials, or "drift," north of Amherst, surrounding swamps, in precisely the same manner as those usually referred to the glacial period in Scotland and Northern Europe. They have been called "moraines" by some geologists; but if we call in the agency



of ice, as I am well disposed to do, we must attribute their accumulation to the melting of icebergs charged with fragments of gravel and rock, rather than to glaciers. Professor Hitchcock has, in fact, styled them iceberg moraines.

At Smith's Ferry, near Northampton, about eleven miles north of Springfield, I examined, in company with the Professor, the red sandstone on the banks of the Connecticut River, where the celebrated foot-prints of birds are beautifully exhibited. The rock consists of thin-bedded sandstone (New Red, Trias?) alternating with red coloured shale, some of the flags being distinctly ripple-marked. The dip of the layers, on which the Ornithichnites are imprinted in great abundance, varies from eleven to fifteen degrees. It is evident that in this place many superimposed beds must have been successively trodden upon, as different sets of footsteps are traceable through a thickness of sandstone exceeding ten feet. My companion also pointed out to me that some of the beds, exposed several yards down the river, and containing Ornithichnites, would, if prolonged, pass under those of the principal locality, and make the entire thickness throughout which the impressions prevail at intervals, perhaps, twenty or thirty feet. We cannot, therefore, explain these phenomena simply by supposing large sheets of mud to have been spread out by the tidal waters, as may be observed on the broad flats bordering the Bay of Fundy. These last, it is true, as will be shown in a future chapter, exhibit the recent foot-prints of birds, in many successive layers, for a depth of two or three inches; but I cannot conceive such markings to extend through a thickness of twenty-five feet without supposing a



subsidence of the ground to have taken place from time to time during the deposition of the layers on which the birds walked. The tracks are too well defined and distinct to have been made under water: there are clear indications of joints in the different toes; and there is generally such a deviation from a straight line in any three prints following each other as is observable in the trifid marks which birds leave on the sands of the sea-coast. The birds must have been of various sizes, from that of a small sand-piper to bipeds larger than the ostrich; and it is highly interesting to remark how regularly the distance between the footsteps increases or diminishes in proportion to the size of the foot-marks. In some of the most diminutive, for example, they are no more than three inches apart, but in the case of the largest (*Ornithichnites gigas*) they are from four to six feet. The length of the foot in the huge species last mentioned is in some instances no less than nineteen inches. Its magnitude being nearly twofold that of the African ostrich, as estimated by the foot (*ex pede Herculem*), and the acknowledged antiquity of the rock, disinclined many naturalists to adopt the views of Professor Hitchcock, when he referred the markings to extinct birds; but the discovery of the bones of the Moa or Dinornis of New Zealand, described by Mr. Owen, proved the existence, at no remote period, of feathered bipeds nearly as gigantic, and reconciled the zoologist at least to the credibility of the fact, however marvellous.

The waters of the Connecticut being low, I had an opportunity of seeing a ledge of rock of red shale laid bare, on which were imprinted a single line of nine footsteps of *Ornithichnites giganteus*, turning alter-



nately right and left, and separated from each other by intervals of about five feet. At one spot there was a space several yards square, where the entire surface of the shale was irregular and jagged, owing to the number of footsteps, not one of which could be traced distinctly, as when a flock of sheep have passed over a muddy road; but on withdrawing from this area the confusion gradually ceased, and the tracks became more and more distinct. The Professor informed me, that since he first announced his belief, in 1836, that these impressions were referable to birds, he had observed above two thousand foot-prints, probably made by nearly thirty distinct species, all indented on the upper surface of the strata, and only exhibiting casts in relief on the under side of the beds resting on such indented surfaces.

This sandstone is of much higher antiquity (see p. 125.) than any formation in which fossil bones or other indications of birds have been detected in Europe. Still we have no ground for inferring from such facts that the feathered tribe made its first appearance in the western hemisphere at this period. It is too common a fallacy to fix the era of the first creation of each tribe of plants or animals, and even of animate beings in general, at the precise point where our present retrospective knowledge happens to stop. The discoveries in the Connecticut valley ought to teach us extreme caution in deducing general conclusions from mere negative evidence, especially when we infer the non-existence of land animals from the absence of their remains in contemporaneous marine strata.

On leaving Amherst for Springfield, we ascended Mount Holyoke, the lower part of which is formed of

horizontal  
capped  
This  
summit  
the white  
the blue  
white  
several  
British  
Imm  
(April  
off the  
made the  
jolted in  
an exce  
ford on  
so that,  
on "the  
in time  
miles lo  
the even  
than 20  
where  
coloured  
white, y  
nite. T  
Professo  
in the I  
ance, t  
here, as  
intellige  
of a mil  
from 35



horizontal strata of red sandstone, while the summit is capped with a picturesque mass of basaltic greenstone. This hill has been isolated by denudation, and from its summit we enjoyed a fine view of the fertile plain of the winding Connecticut. On its flanks we gathered the blue *Hepatica triloba*, the *Houstonia cerulea*, a white saxifrage, the May flower, *Epigæa repens*, and several plants, which have been recently naturalised in British gardens.

Immediately after my arrival at Boston I set out (April 19th) to explore the island of Martha's Vineyard, off the south coast of Massachusetts. Travellers who made this excursion a few years ago complain of being jolted in a coach over deep ruts and huge stones: now, an excellent railway carried me rapidly to New Bedford on the coast, where a steam-boat was in readiness, so that, having started long after sunrise, I was landed on "the Vineyard," eighty miles distant from Boston, in time to traverse half the island, which is about 20 miles long from east to west, before sunset. Late in the evening I reached the lofty cliffs of Gayhead, more than 200 feet high, at the western end of the island, where the highly-inclined tertiary strata are gaily coloured, some consisting of bright red clays, others of white, yellow, and green sand, and some of black lignite. They have been compared, not unaptly, by Professor Hitchcock, to the tertiary beds of Alum Bay in the Isle of Wight, which they resemble in appearance, though not in age. I collected many fossils here, assisted by some resident Indians, who are very intelligent. The section is continuous for four fifths of a mile, the beds dipping to the N. E. at an angle of from 35° to 50°, and in some places to 70°. Their



entire thickness must be very great, exceeding 2000 feet. The clays predominate over the sands. In the black beds containing lignites coniferous wood is abundant, and amber is said to have been found. The organic remains prevail at intervals in various strata, but I extracted most of them from a bed of green sand (*b*),

Fig. 6.



Section at Gayhead.

- A. Lighthouse.  
*c.* Osseous conglomerate with walrus. *b.* Greensand with sharks' teeth.  
*d.* Drift.

near the north-eastern end. They consisted of casts of shells, teeth of large sharks, the vertebræ of a dolphin, and of a whale of great size. I also discovered a tooth referred by Mr. Owen to the canine tooth of a seal.

Together with these, I found numerous nodules of the shape of kidney potatoes, from one to two inches in diameter, smooth externally, which I presume to have been coprolites. They have been analysed for me by my friend J. Middleton, Esq., F. G. S., and found to contain no less than 50 per cent. of phosphate of lime, the constitution of the latter being such as is peculiar to organic substances. They also consist of fluoride of calcium, chloride of sodium, and other elements. These coprolites, therefore, seem closely analogous in composition as in age, to those found by Professor Henslow in the Suffolk crag of Felixstow, and which accompany the bones of sharks and cetacea.

Near the lighthouse there is a great fold in the beds, where they are so bent as to have twice a north-easterly and once a south-westerly dip. One of these



folded beds (c) consists of an osseous conglomerate, in which I found several rolled cetaceous remains; and I purchased from a fisherman residing near the promontory a fossil skull, which he told me had fallen out of this conglomerate upon the beach below. It retained but a small portion of the original animal matter, was slightly rolled, and Mr. Owen recognised it as the cranium of a Walrus, or Morse, nearly allied to the existing species (*Trichecus Rosmarus*, Linn.). On comparison, it was observed to differ from it, in having six molar teeth, instead of four, on each side of the upper jaw. There are eleven specimens of the recent species in the College of Surgeons, in all of which there are no more than four grinders on each side. The tusk, also, of the Gayhead fossil has a rounder form than that of the recent Morse. (See plate V.)

Near Chilmark, on the S.W. side of the island, I found the same beds as at Gayhead, in a still more disturbed state. Upon the whole, the organic remains, especially the sharks' teeth, lead me decidedly to the opinion that the strata belong to a part of the tertiary series newer than the Eocene, to which they were formerly referred. They must be at least as modern as the Miocene marls of Virginia and Maryland, before described (p. 134). Several of the sharks' teeth are specifically identical with the fossils of those marls, and of the Faluns of Touraine and the Suffolk crag; and there are no greensands either of the Eocene or cretaceous periods in Martha's Vineyard, as some have conjectured. These conclusions, in regard to the modern date of this formation, are interesting, because, but for this small island, we should have had no evidence



of the development of a great series of subterranean movements in this part of the American continent. The disturbances in question occurred between the Miocene epoch and the Boulder period; and we know not how far their influence may have extended over the hypogene rocks of New England.

The tertiary clays and sands of Martha's Vineyard are for the most part deeply buried beneath a mass of drift (*d*, *Fig. 6.*), in which lie huge erratic blocks of granite, often from twenty to thirty feet in diameter, which must have come from the North, probably from the mountains of New Hampshire. This covering of granitic detritus imparts to the soil a sterile character totally different from that which would naturally belong to the tertiary clays and marls.

I alluded to some Indians settled near Gayhead, a remnant of the aborigines, who have been protected by the Government of Massachusetts, all sales of land by them to the whites being null and void by law. They make excellent sailors in the whale-fishery of the South Seas, a source of great wealth to the inhabitants of "the Vineyard," and of New Bedford on the main land. That occupation, with all its privations and dangers, seems admirably suited to the bodily constitution and hereditary instinct of a hunter tribe, to whom steady and continuous labour is irksome and injurious.

The history of the extermination of the aboriginal Indians of New England is a melancholy tale, especially after so many successful exertions had been made to educate and christianize them. When at Harvard College, a copy of the Bible was shown me by Mr. Jared Sparks, translated by the missionary Father

Ellio  
guag  
crowd  
On  
saw s  
from  
shore  
large  
mus)  
by the



Elliott into the Indian tongue. It is now a dead language, although preached for several generations to crowded congregations.

On my return across the Vineyard from Gayhead I saw several spotted tortoises with red heads migrating from one pond of fresh water to another. On the sea-shore another novelty attracted my notice—several large specimens of the King Crab (*Limulus polyphemus*) were crawling about in the salt-water pools left by the sea on the retiring of the tide.



## CHAPTER XIII.

*Meeting of Association of American Geologists at Boston.—Popular Libraries in New England.—Large Sale of Literary Works in the United States.—American Universities.—Harvard College near Boston.—English Universities.—Peculiarities of their System.—Historical Sketch of the Causes of these Peculiarities not of Medieval Origin.—Collegiate Corporations.—Their altered Relation to the English Universities after the Reformation.—Constitution given to Oxford by Leicester and Laud.—System of Public Teaching, how superseded by the Collegiate.—Effects of the Change.—Oxford Examination Statute of 1800.—Its subsequent Modification and Results.—Rise of Private Tutors at Oxford and Cambridge.—Consequences of this Innovation.—Struggle at Oxford in 1839 to restore the Professorial System.—Causes of its Rejection.—Tractarianism.—Supremacy of Ecclesiastics.—Useful Examiners.—Cambridge.—Advocacy of the System followed there.—Influence of the English Academical Plan on the Cultivation of the Physical Sciences, and all Branches of Progressive Knowledge.—Remedies and Reforms.*

*April 25.*—I returned to Boston to attend the third annual meeting of the Association of American Geologists, who had held their previous meetings of 1840 and 1841 at Philadelphia. On the present occasion Dr. Morton took the chair, and in the course of the week papers were read and freely discussed on a variety of scientific questions by many of the leading American geologists, some of whom had come from distant parts of the Union. The patronage afforded by the state surveys has created a numerous class both of practised observers and able writers. Among those engaged in these government undertakings, who took



part in these proceedings, I may mention Professor Hitchcock, of Massachusetts, Professor W. B. Rogers, of Virginia, Professor H. D. Rogers, of Pennsylvania, Mr. Vanuxem, Dr. Emmons, Mr. Hall, and Dr. Beck—all engaged on the survey of New York; Dr. Jackson, who has surveyed Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Maine; and Dr. Locke, of Ohio. There were also present Professor Silliman and his son, Messrs. Nicollet, Redfield, Gould, Bailey, Dana, Couthouy, Haldeman, Hubbard, J. L. Hayes, and others, all known as authors or contributors to scientific publications. The structure of the Alleghany Hills, and of the coal-fields of America, the origin of coral reefs, the glacial theory, the effects of icebergs, the nature of the foot-marks in the red sandstone of Connecticut valley, and other subjects, were debated upon during the week, in an animated but most amicable style. The citizens of Boston, learning that means were wanting for the publication of a series of valuable memoirs, read at this and former meetings of the association, came forward with their usual liberality, and supplied funds, by aid of which a volume entitled "Transactions of the Association of American Geologists for 1840-42," a work reflecting the highest credit on the cultivators of geology and its kindred sciences in America, made its appearance soon afterwards.

Munificent bequests and donations for public purposes, whether charitable or educational, form a striking feature in the modern history of the United States, and especially of New England. Not only is it common for rich capitalists to leave by will a portion of their fortune towards the endowment of national institutions, but individuals during their lifetime make



magnificent grants of money for the same objects. There is here no compulsory law for the equal partition of property among children, as in France, and, on the other hand, no custom of entail or primogeniture, as in England, so that the affluent feel themselves at liberty to share their wealth between their kindred and the public; it being impossible to found a family, and parents having frequently the happiness of seeing all their children well provided for and independent long before their death. I have seen a list of bequests and donations made during the last thirty years, for the benefit of religious, charitable, and literary institutions, in the State of Massachusetts alone, and they amounted to no less a sum than six millions of dollars, or more than a million sterling.

There are popular libraries in almost every village of Massachusetts, and a growing taste for the reading of good books is attested by the sale of large editions of such works as Herschel's *Natural Philosophy*, Washington Irving's *Columbus*, and Plutarch's *Lives*. Of each of these, from five to twenty thousand copies have been sold. It will seem still more remarkable, that no less than sixteen thousand copies have been purchased of Johnes's *Translation of Froissart's Chronicles*, illustrated by wood-engravings, and twelve thousand of Liebig's *Animal Chemistry*. These editions were very cheap, as there was no author's copyright; but it is still more surprising, that about four thousand copies of Prescott's *Mexico* should have been sold in one year in the U. S. at the price of six dollars, or about twenty-six shillings. When, in addition to these signs of the times, we remember the grants before alluded to, of the New England and other states in behalf of public



schools and scientific surveys, we may indulge very sanguine hopes of the future progress of this country towards a high standard of general civilization.

The universities of the United States are annually increasing in number, and their discipline in New England (to which my inquiries on this head were chiefly confined) is very strict; a full staff of professors, with their assistants or tutors, superintending at once the moral conduct and intellectual culture of the students. In each university, there is a divinity-school, appropriated to some particular religious denomination, which is Presbyterian or Independent at New Haven, in Connecticut, where there are about six hundred students; and Unitarian at Harvard College, near Boston, where there are about four hundred. But youths belonging to various sects resort indifferently to New Haven, Harvard, and other colleges, to pursue their ordinary academical studies. After obtaining their first degree, they enter, if intended for the ministry, some theological faculty established in the same or in another university, or constituting a separate institution for the professional training of future divines. The Episcopalians have a flourishing college of this kind in the State of New York. The Independents, or Congregationalists, have one at Andover in Massachusetts, where a distinguished professor of biblical learning has been known to draw Episcopalians and students of other sects to his lectures, no persons being excluded, by subscription to articles of religion, from entering and studying in any college.

The multiplication of academical establishments, in consequence of every State, and every sect of Christians in each State, being ambitious of having schools



of their own, is an evil, but one which would be greatly aggravated were the general as well as the theological education in the universities alike sectarian ; or if students of classical literature, mathematics, law, and medicine, all required teachers who agreed with them in every article of faith. It has been remarked, by a living satirist, that the force of sectarian animosity, like that of gravity, increases inversely as the squares of the distance ; but, in spite of the occasional ebullition in recent times of an intolerant spirit on both sides of the Atlantic, there are many auspicious signs of the approach of an era when differences of religious opinion will less interfere with national systems of education, both in schools and colleges. The present state of academical affairs in Scotland will perhaps be thought inconsistent with this view, where one party has been endeavouring to expel from the universities all professors who favour "free church" opinions, while the seceders from the establishment, not satisfied with a new divinity-school, have aimed at a new university for general instruction. There is now reason, however, to hope that the last-mentioned project will fail. There are already too many academical institutions in Scotland, in proportion to the means of adequately remunerating the professors ; and their farther impoverishment, by the withdrawal of students from them to a new college, would be an injury to science and civilisation. The policy of the government in 1836, when an attempt was made to unite King's and Marischal Colleges at Aberdeen, was wise and statesmanlike, but it was baffled by the local jealousies of the two ancient rivals. Every effort should now be made to confine the new academical foundation to the faculty of theol-



ogy ; and, for the same reason, to prevent the establishment of rival parochial schools, for the existing parish schools are often at present inadequately supported. It is deplorable enough to be compelled to admit the necessity of any new academical establishment, when we reflect that there is absolutely no difference of doctrine between the new rival churches in Scotland ; and that the points of dissent have been deemed for a century and a half of such subordinate importance, as not to afford justifiable grounds for an open breach. In the Irish College at Belfast, endowed by government, a professor of Greek of acknowledged ability, nominated originally by the crown, with the approbation of the Presbyterians, has suddenly been deprived of the greater part of his class in consequence of the "free church" movement, although no blame is imputed to him on the score of a proselytising spirit, or of a wish to inculcate his own religious views. In the midst of these and other discouraging circumstances, it is satisfactory to observe, that three out of the five Scotch universities have recently declared to Parliament their desire that the religious tests which now shackle them and impair their efficacy may be removed.

In no subject do the Americans display more earnestness than in their desire to improve their system of education, both elementary and academical. They have sent missionaries to Europe, who have published elaborate reports on the methods of teaching now employed in Britain, Germany, Holland, and France, and they seem ready to adopt whatever appears worthy of imitation in these different models. The great difficulty under which they labour, and one inevitable in a new country, and common to them and the British



American colonies, is the early age at which young men quit college, sooner by at least two years than in England.

In Harvard College, Cambridge, near Boston, the best endowed university in the United States, there are thirty-two professors, each assisted by one or more tutors. Many of them are well known in the literary world as authors. Five only of the thirty-two were educated for the pulpit, three of whom are professors of divinity, one of ethics, and one of history. All the students are required to attend divine service in the churches to which they severally belong, but the divinity-school for professional education is Unitarian. The pupils are examined in the New Testament, also in Paley's "Evidences," and Butler's "Analogy." The proportion of professors to students (about 400 in number) is far greater than that of college tutors in the English universities. The tutors of Harvard College may be compared, in some degree, to our private tutors, except that they are more under the direction of the professors, being selected by them from among the graduates, as the best scholars, and each is specially devoted to some one department of learning. These tutors, from whose number the professors are very commonly chosen, usually teach the freshmen, or first-year students, or prepare pupils for the professors' lectures. Care is also bestowed on the classification of the young men, according to their acquirements, talents, and tastes. To accomplish this object, the student, on entering, may offer to undergo an examination, and, if he succeeds, he may pass at once into the second, third, or fourth year's class, the intermediate steps being dispensed with; he may also choose cer-



tain subjects of study, which are regarded as equivalents, or are exchangeable with others. Thus, in the four years of the regular academical course, a competent knowledge of Latin, Greek, and of various branches of mathematics, is exacted from all; but, in regard to other subjects, such as moral philosophy, modern languages, chemistry, mineralogy, and geology, some of them may be substituted for others, at the option of the pupil. There are public examinations at the end of every term for awarding honours or ascertaining the proficiency of students; who, if they have been negligent, or put back into a previous year's class, the period of taking their degree being in that case deferred. Honours are obtainable for almost every subject taught by any professor; but emulation is not relied upon as the chief inducement for study. After passing an examination for the fourth year's class, the student can obtain the degree of Bachelor of Arts, and may enter the divinity, medical, or law schools.

Every inquiry into the present state of the universities in America drew forth from my informants, in return, many questions respecting Oxford and Cambridge. I was asked by professors of geology, chemistry, modern history, modern literature, and other branches of knowledge, why the classes for these subjects had recently fallen off in the English universities? was their decline to be ascribed to tractarianism, a form of religious doctrine which, they said, had been recently transplanted into the United States, and was growing vigorously in the new soil? I declared my conviction that the tractarian movement at Oxford had been rather one of the effects of the slow and gradual changes introduced in modern times into the system of



instruction there, than the cause of the recent banishment from that seat of learning of many sciences formerly taught there. The more I endeavoured to explain the present state of our academical course of study, and the peculiar organisation of the corps of teachers to whom its superintendence is confided, the more strange it appeared to my New England friends ; and I myself became the more aware of its distinctive and anomalous character, when contrasted with the methods followed elsewhere. Many who have been educated, like myself, at Oxford, are ignorant of the system of education formerly acted upon in our English universities, and of the real nature or causes of the present state of things. I shall, therefore, attempt to give, in the remainder of this chapter, a brief account of the leading peculiarities of our former and present academical machinery, and to point out its inevitable consequence, the very limited range of studies which can be pursued, so long as things remain unaltered. I shall do this the more willingly, because I know that any information which may throw light on the subject will be equally interesting to my readers on both sides of the Atlantic.

It may awaken curiosity in those who have never made any inquiries into these matters, if I make one or two preliminary statements. In the first place, then, the mass of students or undergraduates at Oxford is divided into twenty-four separate communities or colleges, very unequal in number, the residents in each varying from 10 in the smaller to about 140 in the larger colleges, and the whole business of educating these separate sections of the youth is restricted to the tutors of the separate colleges. Consequently, two or three individuals, and occasionally a single instructor,



may be called upon to give lectures in all the departments of human knowledge embraced in the academical course of four years. If the college be small, there is only occupation and salary sufficient to support one tutor; any attempt, therefore, to subdivide the different branches of learning and sciences among distinct teachers is abandoned. There is no opportunity for one man to concentrate the powers of his mind on a single department of learning, to endeavour to enlarge its bounds, and carefully to form and direct the opinions of his pupil. In a few of the larger colleges, indeed, some rude approach to such a partition is made, so far as to sever the mathematical from the classical studies; but even then the tutors in each division, are often called upon, in the public examinations, to play their part in both departments. Thus, a single instructor gives lectures or examines in the writings of the Greek and Roman historians, philosophers, and poets, together with logic, the elements of mathematics, and theology.

For the benefit of my foreign readers, it may be as well to remark that the scholars to be taught are not boys between the ages of fourteen and eighteen, at which latter age the degree of Bachelor of Arts was very commonly conferred in the olden times at Oxford, but young men between eighteen and twenty-two, who, at the expiration of their academical course, usually quit college, and enter at once upon a profession, or into political life. In the next place, I may state, that the choice of teachers, to whom so arduous and ambitious a task is allotted, is by no means left open to free competition, like the professorships in most ancient and modern universities; but, on the contrary,



is confined within very narrow bounds. The college tutors are selected from graduates who are on the foundation of their respective colleges, and who may have obtained their appointment originally, some because they happened to be founder's kin, or were educated at a particular school, others because they were born in a particular town, county, or diocese ; a few only being selected from merit, or as having distinguished themselves in examinations open to all candidates. This latter class, however, has, it is true, increased of late years. Most of these teachers forfeit their fellowships, and most probably with it their office of tutor, if they should marry, or if, after a certain number of years, they do not embrace the clerical profession. They also look to preferment in the Church, from their position in their college, so that they have every inducement to regard the business of teaching as a temporary calling, subordinate and subsidiary to another, of a different, and to them more advantageous and important, kind. Their office as instructors is, in short, a mere stepping-stone to something else ; and they hope to gain their reward, not when they are superannuated, for then they would be unfit for highly responsible ecclesiastical duties, but when they are still in the prime of life. In fact, their promotion is so contrived, as at once to cut short the career of usefulness in which they may have hitherto distinguished themselves.

It will naturally be taken for granted, by those who have never investigated the history of the universities, that the restrictions and fetters above enumerated are all of monastic and medieval origin. The celibacy of the teachers, the almost entire monopoly of tuition by the clergy, seem clearly to point to a period more re-

mote  
and c  
at the  
truth  
origin  
as in  
comm  
system  
cient  
to exc  
hibite  
legiat  
tion i  
subse  
part o  
of the  
mence

In  
privat  
our tw  
revert  
Europ  
there  
those  
quired  
chroni  
elsewh  
but it  
togeth  
ships,  
and lo  
erated  
duced



more than the Reformation, and when the supremacy and exorbitant power of the church of Rome were still at their height. But nothing can be farther from the truth. On inquiry, we learn with surprise, that the original plan of education at Oxford and Cambridge, as in the other European universities, was public and common to the whole mass of students. The present system has been upheld by no blind veneration for ancient usages, nor by the conservative principle carried to excess. There has been no dread of innovation exhibited in modern times. The substitution of the collegiate for a more general university scheme of instruction is the result of a modern revolution, altogether subsequent to the era of the Reformation, and no small part of it is a creation of yesterday, devised at the close of the eighteenth, and only carried out since the commencement of the nineteenth, century.

In order to understand how the colleges, or a few private corporations, obtained their ascendancy over our two great national institutions, it is necessary to revert to the history of those early ages when the European universities originated. It appears that there was often a prodigious concourse of students to those seats of learning where the public teachers acquired celebrity. We may refuse to credit some old chroniclers, who reckon the number at Oxford and elsewhere at ten, twenty, and even thirty thousand ; but it is certain that the scholars were often so crowded together in small towns, as to be exposed to great hardships, owing to the exorbitant price demanded for board and lodging. Benevolent individuals, who commiserated the sufferings of the poorer students, were induced from time to time to found houses, where they



might obtain accommodation, and sometimes board, free of expense. Those who were not on such foundations were required, whether graduates or undergraduates, to belong to some Hall, or Inn, the head of which was usually elected by the scholars, and approved of by the chancellor of the university, or his deputy. As a large part of the students were boys, corresponding in age to those now educated at our public schools, they were placed under the special guardianship of some tutor, who was expected to look to their orderly behaviour, their religious exercises, and even, as appears by the old statutes, to "see that they conformed to academical rules in regard to matters of external appearance, such as their clothes, boots, and hair." It was the duty of the head of each house to see that the tutors were fit for their office, and to take care that the pupils attended the lectures of the *public readers*, or Masters of Arts, who gave lectures in the Schools.

On the Continent, the houses founded for the support of indigent teachers and scholars were entirely subjected to the authorities of their respective universities; but in England several of the colleges were governed by private statutes, over which the university exercised no control. Hence they had often interests apart from those of the university and of the public; but for centuries they were few in number, there being only three colleges in Oxford in the fourteenth century; whereas there were three hundred halls, or licensed boarding-houses, each sustained by the private contributions of students. At length the Reformation worked suddenly a complete revolution in the relative position of the collegiate corporations and the academical body

at la  
dents  
temp  
uncer  
cessor  
what  
rent  
be th  
Reaso  
mona  
ments  
that l  
sions,  
The  
ence  
were  
house  
able  
pover  
new  
subse  
during  
built  
obtain  
an in  
lege v  
remain  
and l

\* Fo  
sities of  
Univer  
educat  
of Edi



at large. The religious schism banished many students who did not acquiesce in the new opinions. The temper of Henry the Eighth was so capricious and uncertain, and the policy of his three immediate successors so contradictory, that it was difficult to know what was the religion by law established for the current year; still less possible to calculate what would be the statutable orthodoxy for the year ensuing. Reasonable fears were also entertained that, as the monastic property had been confiscated, the endowments of the universities might not long be spared, so that literature and the church were uninviting professions, whether for ambitious or conscientious men.\* The halls, depending for their support on the confluence of students, were ruined, except a few which were connected with certain colleges. Land and houses fell in value in Oxford, so that the colleges were able to purchase considerable property from the impoverished burghers for a trifling consideration. Four new colleges were established within half a century subsequent to the Reformation, and altogether six during the sixteenth century, some of which were built on the sites of suppressed monasteries, or on land obtained by grants from the crown, or purchased for an insignificant price. After this period, only one college was founded—in 1610; and three of the eight remaining halls changed into colleges, in 1610, 1702, and 1740.

\* For many details respecting the early constitution of the universities of Paris and Oxford, and the subsequent changes in the English Universities, see an article by Sir William Hamilton, Bart., who was educated at Oxford, and is now Professor of Logic in the University of Edinburgh, *Edin. Review*, No. xcvi., June, 1831.



Originally few of the colleges admitted undergraduates not on the foundation ; but they now opened their gates, and were able to include the whole academical population within their walls, by which they obtained a preponderating weight and influence. This power, however, might have been defeated, if the Earl of Leicester, chancellor of the university, had not obtained in 1570, an exclusive right to institute new halls which was afterwards by statute vested in his successors. As the chief magistrate acted usually in concert with the heads of colleges, it was henceforth easy for the colleges to prevent any new hall from interfering with their monopoly ; whereas, previously to 1570, the establishment of a hall was easy, it being only required that a small number of scholars should hire a house, find caution for a year's rent, and choose for principal a graduate of respectable character. The chancellor, or his deputy, could not, in that case, refuse to sanction his appointment.

The new constitution, procured for the university by Leicester, was considerably modified under the chancellorship of Archbishop Laud, who raised the heads of houses to the rank of a public body, called the Hebdomadal Board, to whom the privilege was given of proposing new laws to the House of Convocation. To the latter, consisting of the doctors and the masters of arts, the supreme legislation was still left but without the power of initiating any measures. The heads were, by the constitution of their colleges, almost all ecclesiastics, and chosen from among the fellows of their respective colleges. Their election was, therefore, subject to all the disabilities and restrictions imposed on the fellows by the caprice of the founder.

Thus  
of cler  
inven  
tered  
legisla

From  
predile  
inter  
not re  
quent  
nation  
gun t  
severa  
dowed  
tury,  
instru  
origin  
quired  
teachi  
divide  
appoi  
regain  
suppo  
with  
statut  
(the  
public  
some  
which  
their  
as th  
ordin  
times



Thus two new elements, the preponderating influence of clerical over lay rulers, and the fortuitous restrictions invented for the regulation of private corporations, entered suddenly, and as it were accidentally, into the legislative constitution of the university.

From this period, it was almost inevitable, that the predilections of men of one profession, and the private interests of certain corporate bodies, should modify, if not remodel, the whole academical system, and frequently prevail over interests of a more general and national character. Soon after the university had begun to recover from the shock of the Reformation, several new readerships and professorships were endowed by Laud, and several others in the next century, after his time, in aid of that system of public instruction in the schools, which had been conducted originally by certain Masters of Arts, who were required to read and expound different subjects. The teaching of the undergraduates was now, therefore, divided between the colleges and the public instructors appointed by the university. The latter would have regained their former ascendancy, if they had been supported by the Heads of houses, who were intrusted with the charge of watching over the observance of statutes, and all "scholastic improvements." But they (the Heads) no longer obliged the students to attend public lectures regularly; and they frequently allowed some of the professors to desist from lecturing altogether, which many of them, from indolence, and from finding their audiences fall off, were disposed to do, especially as their instructions were given gratis. Such was the ordinary custom in the old universities; but in later times it had been found that this arrangement was



very defective, that the professors were negligent, and that the students undervalued what cost them nothing, so that fees were permitted to be exacted. In Oxford, however, the professors were supplanted, in respect to these fees, by the college tutor, to whom a large part of the business of education was thus gradually transferred. Had a different course been adopted, the professors, acquiring in many cases celebrity in their respective departments, and devoted permanently, and often enthusiastically, to the sciences they taught, would have married and settled for life in Oxford; they would have gained an ascendancy over the minds of the students and the younger graduates in convocation; and many of them would have acquired an European reputation. The colleges might naturally feel jealous of allowing the growth of such a counterpoise to the power with which they had been recently invested.

When the old machinery was thus falling into disuse, and before the plan of college tuition was fully organised, the academical discipline appears to have been extremely lax, and the provision for education defective in the extreme. It was often difficult to find a college tutor competent to undertake the office, and there was occasionally only one or two of the resident fellows willing to accept of it. Instead of these important places being open to a free and fair competition, we may say that they were often held by self-appointed teachers. A regulation was made, that all the undergraduates should lodge within the walls of some college, which had the effect of preventing students from freely selecting those tutors who had the highest reputation, as rooms within the walls were

soon  
ing  
said  
whic  
towa  
scho  
the c  
as q  
univ  
whe  
comm  
spir  
dimi

Of  
of st  
fesso  
audi  
deliv  
of p  
Phil  
but  
struc  
men  
close  
loud  
deep  
plan  
ann  
had  
habi  
prov  
mer  
fore



soon filled, and no overflow was allowed of pupils lodging in the town. The enforcement of this law was said to have been jealously watched by some colleges, which would otherwise have been all but deserted, towards the close of the last century. The numerous scholarships and other endowments of the university, the college livings, and the academical degrees required as qualifications for entering holy orders, rendered the university very independent of public opinion; and whether it taught nothing efficiently, or failed to accommodate its form of instruction to the progress and spirit of the age, it could never apprehend a serious diminution of students.

Occasionally, there were examinations and a revival of studious habits in a particular college, or some professor gave a popular course of lectures, and drew large audiences. Thus Bradley, the famous astronomer, delivered, between the years 1746 and 1760, to a class of pupils averaging 57 in number, lectures on Natural Philosophy, not in Latin, as had been the old practice, but in English. But the general indolence of the instructors, and the idleness and dissipation of the young men, became so notorious and flagrant towards the close of the eighteenth century, that a reform was loudly called for, and the governing body became deeply impressed with a sense of its expediency. Many plans were devised for carrying it into effect. As the annual or terminal examinations in several colleges had been found most useful in maintaining orderly habits among the young men, it was proposed to improve the public examinations, which had become a mere form, and to compel every one to pass them before obtaining his degree of Bachelor of Arts. Honours



were to be awarded to those who distinguished themselves.

It was now evident that the shape in which this new statute was framed would determine what studies should henceforth be encouraged or discouraged in the university. It was clearly pointed out, at the time, that all those subjects which could not lead to academical distinctions would be virtually proscribed ; and that the well-known maxim of our lawyers in the interpretation of statutes would hold good in this case, "*De non apparentibus et de non existentibus eadem est ratio.*" Whatever science was omitted in the list of studies selected for the trial of strength would be henceforth not merely slighted, but virtually blotted out of the academical course. Academical honours were here no empty bubbles, but might be expected to lead to fellowships, tutorships, livings, and other solid advantages. If the Heads of Houses and Members of Convocation had been simply legislating for national objects, and had not been the representatives of private and collegiate interests, which were not always identical with those of the public, it would have been easy to devise a comprehensive system of examinations, consisting of several boards, to which the professors, as well as tutors, would have been appointed, in stricter accordance with the spirit, and even letter, of the old statutes, than the new law which was then enacted. But this might soon have altered entirely the relative position in which the college tutors now stood to the public readers and professors. The latter would soon have acquired greater consequence in convocation ; and had such a measure been proposed by the Hebdomadal Board it would probably have been lost. Ac-



cordingly, it was soon found that the new examination statute of the year 1800 was to be worked by the college tutors, young men for the most part about thirty years of age; and such being the case, no one can deny that studies embracing the Greek and Roman writers on history, philosophy, poetry, logic, rhetoric, and ethics, besides Christian theology, and the elements of mathematics, was as extensive a range as was compatible with such an executive. If they erred, their error certainly consisted in enlarging the circle of subjects far beyond the capacity of the college tutor, be his talents ever so great. The legislators especially displayed discretion in excluding from the schools all the more progressive branches of knowledge; for, in order to be a safe guide in directing the opinions of a pupil, or teaching what is known in such branches, liable as they are to be modified from year to year, by new facts, discoveries, and investigations, the preceptor must have leisure to devote his mind exclusively to one subject.

The new statute did not pass without a severe struggle. The rector of Lincoln College, in particular, opposed it, as a measure that would extinguish all "thirst of knowledge." "There would henceforth," he said, "be no *university* at all, but a system of cramming and partial teaching, after which the student would go out into the world with a narrow mind and darker understanding."

The necessity, however, of preparing for the compulsory examination, before taking a degree, worked immediately a salutary change in the habits and moral conduct of the idler students. The more clever and ambitious amongst them began to be excited by the



competition for honours ; a marked improvement was soon apparent in academical discipline ; the university gained in public favour, and the number of students increased. The classes even of some of the professors were strengthened ; but this effect was of short duration. It was soon found that the honours awarded at the examinations led to fellowships and tutorships ; and the honourable rivalry of many of the colleges induced them to throw open their fellowships and scholarships much more freely than formerly to candidates of the highest merit ; the standard of merit, however, being, for the most part, measured by the new examinations in the schools. New methods were from time to time invented for classifying the youths according to their intellectual qualifications. In 1807, students who distinguished themselves were arranged in two classes, in 1809 in three, and in 1826 in four. A preliminary examination, called the responsions, or "little go," was introduced at the end of the first two years, or in the middle of the student's residence at Oxford. The examinations for degrees were made more and more stringent, and emulation at length stimulated to so high a pitch, that health was often sacrificed in the effort to gain the prize. Useful habits of application were often acquired, but the system was not calculated to foster a love of knowledge for its own sake. To some there was even danger of injury both bodily and mental ; for if they succeeded, they were tempted to believe that they had already achieved something great ; if they failed, their abilities were underrated, both by themselves and their contemporaries.

Another important revolution now took place. As the business of education had previously passed from



the public readers and professors to the college tutors, so the latter were now in no small degree superseded by the private tutors or "crammers." These were graduates chosen by the young men themselves, at an expense of 40*l.* or 50*l.* a year, to read with them, both in term-time and vacation, and prepare them for the examination. An Oxford tutor informed me that, in the years 1840 and 1841, no less than 250, or one fifth of the resident students, procured this kind of assistance, the aggregate sum paid by them amounting to more than 10,000*l.* a year ! These young teachers watch the examinations, are acquainted with the style of the questions, whether *vivâ voce* or on paper, and often with the peculiar views of the examiner. It is their business to prevent their pupil from wasting his strength on topics not likely to be adverted to, and often to enable him to get by rote answers to certain interrogatories. The students are frequently unable to obtain this aid from the college tutor, whose system of lecturing is more general, and who cannot direct his attention to the individual wants and capacities of every pupil. The undergraduates, therefore, may be required to attend, between ten and one o'clock, the lectures of the college tutors. The next two hours (from one to three) are generally occupied by the private tutors, comprising that portion of the day during which the professors are by statute required to lecture. At three o'clock, it is high time for the young men to seek recreation and exercise ; so that all the youths, especially the cleverest ones, are so entirely absorbed in a routine of study connected with the examinations, that the professorial class-rooms must unavoidably be abandoned. Bachelors of arts, and other graduates,



had been heretofore in the habit of attending public lectures; but most of them now became engrossed with the new and lucrative business of cramming.

We learn from Dr. Peacock, now Dean of Ely, for many years an eminent tutor at Trinity College, Cambridge, that in that university, also, a similar revolution took place nearly at the same time.\* "A large proportion," he says, "of all the students, industrious or idle, rich or poor, resort to private tutors, to whom they pay, on an average, about 40*l.* a year. These teachers," he continues, "are young and inexperienced, and not competent to convey enlarged views" to their pupils. The labour imposed on them is too absorbing and severe to allow of the simultaneous prosecution of original studies; and "this unhappy system has contributed, more than any other cause, to the very general, and, in some respects, just complaints, which have been made of late years, of the paucity of works of learning and research which had issued from the University of Cambridge."

And here I may observe, that it is often the boast of writers who extol our university system above that of other countries, that we promote *liberal* studies, and do not condescend to qualify students for a lucrative profession or trade. But what is the real fact? Do not the majority of the ablest students toil at Latin, Greek, and mathematics, with purely professional objects? Are they not preparing themselves for becoming private tutors, schoolmasters, and college-tutors; expecting to combine these avocations with fellowships, or with clerical duties? Are not the things they

\* See his excellent work on the Statutes of the University of Cambridge, p. 156.



learn regarded as the means of earning a livelihood, or what the Germans call "Brodstudien," in plain English, to "make the pot boil?" That some students should be qualifying themselves at the university to become masters in our public schools is highly desirable; and it would be well if the station in society of the schoolmaster, apart from any adventitious aid derived from uniting with it the clerical function, ranked as high in England as it does in Germany and the New-England States; but why should not the utilitarianism of our universities comprehend equally, within the sphere of its educational training, those branches of general knowledge which are equally essential to the future statesman, divine, lawyer, physician, and men of other liberal callings?

I am aware that it may be said, in regard to "crammers," that, under every system, some kind of private tuition will be required, and it will be asked, whether the assistants, under a professorial plan of instruction, would not be equally kept back in the improvement of their own minds? Certainly not—they would divide themselves at once into as many sections as there are departments of study recognised in the public examinations. They would devote their minds steadily to subjects connected with theology, or with law, or medicine, or engineering, or literary criticism, or applied mathematics, or other branches. Occasionally they would lecture for the professor, who, if worthy of his charge, must advance with his science, and not be ignorant of new discoveries and theories. Like him, they could not remain stationary. They would aspire in due time to fill his place, or some chair in another university. Such private tutors, whether lay or clerical,



would not be found, at the expiration of ten years of hard and painful labour, precisely at the point from which they set out immediately after taking their first degree.

In the year 1839, a last and most vigorous attempt was made at Oxford to restore the functions of the professorial body, which had now become contracted within the narrowest limits. The professors of Experimental Philosophy, Comparative Anatomy, Chemistry, Mineralogy, Geology, Botany, Geometry, and Astronomy, many of them well known in the literary and scientific world, sent in a representation to the heads of Houses, in which they declared their inability to discharge the duties they had undertaken, notwithstanding their unabated zeal and devotion. They accompanied their petition with a printed statistical table, showing how the number of their classes had fallen off annually, during a period in which, as they truly observed, the branches of knowledge taught by them were rising in popular favour and importance. It appeared by their table, that the anatomy class had dwindled between the years 1819 and 1838 to less than half, and that of astronomy to one fifth of its original numbers. The same had happened to the class of chemistry, between 1822 and 1838, many others having declined in the like ratio. The petitioners observed that, if no change were made in the examination statute, their usefulness as professors was at an end.

A majority of the heads of Houses were favourable to a reform, and they consequently proposed a new examination statute, in which there was a provision requiring attendance on at least *two* series of professorial lectures, as a preliminary qualification for the bachelor



of arts' degree. The subjects of the various professors' lectures were classified under two heads, and one course was to be selected by the student from each division. The professors were required to keep a register of attendance, and give certificates. Although a new board of examiners to bestow honorary distinctions was not part of this plan, the measure might eventually have led to this and other improvements.

But it was now too late—reform was beyond the power of the Hebdomadal Board. Several academical generations had grown up under the new order of things. The collegiate and private tutors were interested in opposing the new provisions, and they were accordingly rejected in convocation. Yet while they threw out that part of the proposed statute which would have gone far towards reviving the professorial chairs, they passed another part requiring the professors of Astronomy, Experimental Philosophy, Chemistry, Geology, Mineralogy, Anatomy, Botany, Medicine, Civil Law, English Law, Greek, Arabic, Sanscrit, Anglo-Saxon, Poetry, Modern History, and Political Economy, to deliver regular courses of lectures. They were, in fact, bound not only by ancient statutes to require the teachers above enumerated faithfully to discharge their duty, but in modern times, or since the examination statute of 1800, they had sanctioned the foundation of new chairs, such as Experimental Philosophy, Mineralogy, Geology, Political Economy, and Sanscrit, and had accepted annual grants from the Crown to endow certain readerships. In homage, therefore, to the moral obligations they had incurred, not to render these new and old foundations nugatory, they continued to exact an outward conformity to the stat-



utes, by enforcing the delivery of lectures, the efficiency of which they allowed other parts of their system entirely to defeat. Their conduct reminds us of the orders issued by Charles the Fifth to offer up prayers throughout Spain for the deliverance of the Pope, while he suffered his army to retain him prisoner in the Castle of St. Angelo.

It must not be inferred, however, from the preceding observations, that I assume that the majority of the members of Convocation are not men of high principle, and animated with a conscientious desire of discharging faithfully their public duties. They and their predecessors probably did not at any moment deliberately plan or avow to themselves the line of policy which they have followed out so systematically, and with so much unity of purpose. The judgment of each generation has been constantly biassed by the same disturbing causes (the collegiate and clerical interests), which, like a current steadily setting one way, has insensibly carried the whole academical body out of its true course. In conformity to these interests, the original constitution has been gradually modified, and the system, when changed, has formed the minds of the succeeding generation, preparing it for new innovations, all conceived in the same spirit. If any single individual can be charged with a deliberate purpose of altering, essentially, the ancient constitution of the university, it is probably Archbishop Laud.

The year 1839 was memorable in Europe for another event, tending to prove how unpropitious to the cultivation of the physical sciences is the ecclesiastical spirit, whenever it obtains an undue power of interference with academical institutions. In the year alluded to,



the first "congress" of scientific men took place in Italy. It assembled at Pisa, under the auspices of the enlightened prince who now reigns in Tuscany. The Pope interdicted all the professors of his colleges of Rome and Bologna, many of whom were prepared to co-operate warmly with the new association, from attending it. The papal prohibition was continued at the subsequent meetings at Turin, Florence, Milan, and elsewhere. Nevertheless, the congress flourished, and, in spite of the Pontiff's opposition, drew together many of the most distinguished men from all parts of Europe, and of Italy, beyond the confines of the States of the Church. It has also given to the world five costly volumes of valuable scientific memoirs, which, but for such patronage, might have remained unpublished to this day.

Doubtless the vote of the Oxford Convocation in 1839 was influenced by various motives; among others, a conscientious contempt for that sham professorial system which the graduates had so long contrasted with a reality, in the form of compulsory tutorial lectures and examinations, leading to degrees, and often followed by fellowships, livings, prebendal stalls, and bishoprics. In addition to these causes, it has been very generally understood that many, both of the college and private tutors, were opposed to the cultivation of the physical sciences on principle, on account of their alleged irreligious tendency. No one who reads some of the articles written by men who were fellows or tutors at Oxford, in the *British Critic*, against the "British Association for the Promotion of Science," can wonder that such reports were credited, or that they provoked, from a prelate educated at Oxford, the remark that "men



who entertain such fears seem to forget that the book of Nature and the book of Revelation were both written by the same Author."

Men are prone to undervalue those branches of knowledge which are foreign to their own pursuits; and if physicians, or lawyers, or civil engineers, had usurped as decided an ascendancy in the legislation of a university, as the clerical graduates have now acquired at Oxford, complaints as loud and well founded might have been heard, that a due share of attention was not bestowed on studies connected with theology. In this spirit, therefore, it was attempted to mix up religious instruction with the teaching of other subjects. By some tutors it was held desirable that all ethics metaphysics, and philosophy should be "christianized."

The practice of taking up for the examinations for honours such works as Butler's Analogy and Sermons had been encouraged after the year 1830, when a statute had passed "that the philosophy of the ancients might be illustrated in the schools, 'ex neotericorum scriptis,' or by the writings of the moderns." This and other changes had opened the door for considerable modifications in the course of academical study, and had given a new turn to the thoughts of many of the most rising and talented young men. It should be remembered that the last ten years has been the era of the Tractarian movement at Oxford, and the active intellect of the university has been for the most part absorbed in theological controversy. He who aspired to honours was bound in prudence to consider that his young judge, the arbiter of his academical fate, might probably be an advocate of the views set forth in some one or more of the Tracts for the Times. He might



be one who was fully impressed with the dogma that "ethics unconnected with the church is a fundamental fallacy;" that "man without the church has no right to educate man\*;" that "youth is too apt to delight in the inductive, instead of the deductive, reasoning;"—"to prefer novelty to antiquity," investigation to obedience to authority, &c.

As an example of the deductive process, as applied to my own favourite science, by a college tutor and public examiner of this period, I may cite a passage from lectures delivered in the university at the era under consideration, and since published:—

"A geologist, deeply impressed with the mystery of baptism, by which a 'new creature,' *καὶνὴ κτίσις*, is formed, by means of water and fire, would never have fallen into the absurdities of accounting for the formation of the globe solely by water or solely by fire. He would not have maintained either a Vulcanian or a Neptunian theory."† The reader may well imagine, that, if other departments of science were "christianized" after the like fashion, the scholar might run some risk of emerging into the world, from his academical career, with his reasoning powers enfeebled, and his intellects mystified.

But to conclude our historical sketch. After the year 1839, we may consider three-fourths of the sciences, still nominally taught at Oxford, to have been virtually exiled from the University. The class rooms of the professors were some of them entirely, others nearly, deserted.—Chemistry and botany attracted, between the years 1840 and 1844, from three to seven students;

\* See Sewell's *Christian Morals*, ch. iv. and x.

† *Ibid.* ch. xxii.



geometry, astronomy, and experimental philosophy, scarcely more ; mineralogy and geology, still taught by the same professor who, fifteen years before, had attracted crowded audiences, from ten to twelve ; political economy still fewer ; even ancient history and poetry scarcely commanded an audience ; and, strange to say, in a country with whose destinies those of India are so closely bound up, the first of Asiatic scholars gave lectures to one or two pupils, and these might have been absent, had not the cherished hope of a Boden scholarship for Sanscrit induced them to attend.

As if to complete the cycle of change, and to cause the system to depart as widely as possible from the original university, which secured for the students the services of public and permanent teachers, men of mature age and acquirements, and often highly gifted, the Oxford tuition now fell, from year to year, into the hands of younger graduates, whether in the capacity of private tutors or examiners. Several causes had concurred to accelerate the promotion of college fellows. Their number was still the same, not having increased with church extension, and the multiplication of new schools in a growing population. It consequently became so difficult in many colleges to choose for tutors, fellows who were not manifestly too young, that, to remedy the evil, several heads of Houses wisely permitted men who had forfeited their fellowship by marriage to continue as tutors. It would appear, from the Oxford Calendar for 1835, that no less than seven of the Colleges, and four of the Halls, have been driven to this resource. Nevertheless, the majority of the body of public examiners is often under the age of thirty, and some of them only twenty-five years old ! They go out



of office in succession, after serving for two years. On this fluctuating body of young men, responsible to no one for their decisions, whether in passing students for degrees, or in awarding honours, a body having the power of modifying at their caprice the whole style and tenour of the public examinations, the direction of academical education in this great country has practically devolved !

At Cambridge, the collegiate influence has, since the Reformation, caused the university to pass gradually through nearly all the same phases as at Oxford. Here, also, the transference of the business of instruction from the public and permanent to the collegiate and temporary teacher, has coincided precisely, in point of time, with greater strictness in the examinations, and more studious habits and better discipline among the undergraduates. It is natural that, owing to this coincidence, a false notion should be engendered, that the subdivision of labour amongst a well organized body of professors is less effective than the method of college tuition.

It might, perhaps, have been expected that such a subdivision would have been carried farther at Cambridge, in consequence of more than half the students being members of two, out of seventeen, colleges ; namely, Trinity and St. John's. These noble foundations contain, each of them, from 400 to 500 undergraduates, and might almost be regarded, from their numerical strength, as universities of themselves. But although the fellowships in both of them are awarded to merit, the educational functions must be, comparatively speaking, of secondary importance to the fellow-tutor ; for, being almost invariably a clergyman, his



highest hope of future preferment is not in the University, but in the Church. The proportion of students intending to take orders is not so large here as at Oxford, and they are not required to subscribe, on matriculation, any formula of religious belief, so that Roman Catholics and dissenters from the Church of England can study here, and obtain academical honours, though not degrees. The responsible duty of conducting the public examinations is even here in the hands of very young men, though two of the mathematical professors assist in awarding the Smith's Prize, the highest mathematical honour; and the professor of Greek and the public orator, presumed to be a first-rate Latin scholar, preside in the examination for the Chancellor's medal for classics.

Very recently at Cambridge, all branches of knowledge taught by the professors—in a word, every subject except what is understood in our universities by classics and mathematics—have had sentence of banishment passed upon them in the form of new compulsory examinations, under the management of college tutors, the Oxford plan of awarding honours to classical and mathematical attainments alone being adhered to. The professors of chemistry and anatomy, who had formerly considerable classes, have only mustered six or seven pupils, although still compelled to give courses of fifty lectures each. The chairs of Modern History, and of the application of Machinery to the Arts, once numbering audiences of several hundreds, have been in like manner deserted. Yet dispensations are rarely granted for the discontinuance of useless duties, even when only two pupils present themselves.



Moreover, here, as at Oxford, it is not uncommon to give such chairs as Mathematics, Natural Philosophy, Chemistry, Botany, Astronomy, Geology, Mineralogy, and others, to clergymen, who combine them with clerical duties, or throw them up when they obtain preferment, and who, however eminent, owing, as they must do, a mixed allegiance, partly to their ecclesiastical order, and partly to the professorial body, cannot stand up with heart and courage in defence of the public, as opposed to the clerical and collegiate, interests.

Dr. Whewell, now Master of Trinity, after many years' experience as a tutor at Cambridge, published, in 1837, his views on the plan of education adopted in the English universities. His arguments in favour of employing the learned languages as a main instrument of education are unanswerable, and enforced with great eloquence and power. "In what a condition should we be," he observes, "if our connection with the past were snapped—if Greek and Latin were forgotten?"\* No less cogent are his reasons for cultivating mathematics as a means of strengthening the reasoning powers and disciplining the mind. But when we come to that part of his treatise in which he attempts to defend the exclusive monopoly enjoyed by these subjects in the education of young men at Oxford and Cambridge, from the ages of eighteen to twenty-two, including a period at the end of which the majority of them quit college altogether, his commendations of the system appear to me rather to resemble the pleadings of an advocate, than those enlightened and philosophical views which characterise his works in general. Obedience and deference to authority are held forth as if

\* Principles of University Education, London, 1837, ch. i. sect. 4.



they were the chief and almost sole moral virtues to be instilled into the minds of young academicians. The students are treated more as boys and children than as men on the very point of entering on their several duties in life, and who ought, without loss of time, to be acquiring habits of thinking and judging for themselves.

"Mathematical doctrines are fixed and permanent," says the historian of the Inductive Sciences, of whose remarks on this subject I shall give a brief abstract in his own words. "The old truths will always be true. In *philosophical* doctrines a constant change is going on. The old system is refuted, and a new one is erected. There is nothing old, nothing stable. The student cannot but suspect that his teacher and his teacher's creed are but for a day. The mind of a young man employed in attending to teachers of this kind must fail to acquire any steady conviction of the immutable and fixed nature of truth. He becomes a restless speculator, criticising what has already been done in philosophy, attempting to guess what will be the next step. He is placed in the condition of a critic instead of a pupil."—"In mathematics, the teacher is usually the superior of his scholar, who entertains a docile and confiding disposition towards his instructor. He cannot give or refuse his assent when a system is proposed to him, nor feel in the situation of an equal and a judge. The subjects suitable for university teaching are the undoubted truths of mathematics, and works of unquestioned excellence, such as the best classical authors. When engaged in these, the student *respects* his instructor; they are the fit subjects of *college lectures*. A spirit of criticism is awakened by the study



of philosophy, which is a fit subject of *professorial* lectures."<sup>\*</sup>

In commenting on the above passages, I cannot refrain from remarking, that if the teacher of philosophy cannot command the respect of his pupils, he must be ill-qualified for his post. No one who is master of his favourite science will fail to inspire the minds of his more intellectual scholars with a love of what he teaches, and a regard and admiration for their instructor. "Addicti jurare in verba magistri," they will be only too prone to prefer Plato to truth, and defend the professor's theory, even when he himself has seen reason to modify it in accordance with new facts and reasonings.

When we inquire by what kind of training young men can best be prepared, before leaving the university, to enter upon the study or practice of their professions, whether as lawyers, physicians, clergymen, schoolmasters, tutors, or legislators, can we assent to the notion that, by confining instruction to pure mathematics, or the classical writers, more especially if the latter are not treated in a critical spirit, we shall accomplish this end? Do not these belong precisely to the class of subjects in which there is least danger of the student's going wrong, even if he engages in them at home and alone? Should it not be one of our chief objects to prepare him to form sound opinions in matters connected with moral, political, or physical science? Here, indeed, he needs the aid of a trustworthy guide and director, who shall teach him to weigh evidence, point out to him the steps by which truth has been gradually attained in the inductive philosophy, the caution to be

\* University Education, pp. 46—53.



used in collecting facts and drawing conclusions, the prejudices which are hostile to a fair inquiry, and who, while his pupil is interested in the works of the ancients, shall remind him that, as knowledge is progressive, he must avail himself of the latest acquisitions of his own age, in order to attain views more comprehensive and correct than those enjoyed even by predecessors of far superior capacity and genius.

It may appear strange, that while such great sacrifices of time are made in England to the exclusive cultivation of classics, a larger proportion of the best modern editions of Greek and Latin are not the fruit of British scholarship. The cause, however, is easily explained. The highest excellence in literature or in science can only result from a life perseveringly devoted to one department. Such unity of purpose and concentration of power is wholly inconsistent with our academical machinery of tuition.

The panegyrists, indeed, of the modern university system in England, seem never to admit candidly this plain truth, that the colleges have no alternative in regard to the course of study open to them. Take any flourishing university in Great Britain or on the Continent, Berlin, for example, or Bonn, or Edinburgh, where a wide range of sciences are taught. Let the students be divided into fifteen or more sections, without any classification in reference to their age, acquirements, talents, tastes, or future prospects. Assign to each section a separate set of teachers, chiefly clerical, and looking forward to preferment in the Church and public schools, and from them select all your public examiners. What must be the result? The immediate abandonment of three fourths of the sciences now



taught, while those retained will belong of necessity to the less progressive branches of human knowledge. Under conditions so singular as those now imposed on Oxford and Cambridge, I am ready to join their warmest eulogists, and to contend that their plan of education is the best.

In the treatise on the universities, before alluded to, there are hints thrown out on the "ignoble influence of compulsory examinations, which act on the fears rather than on the hopes of young men," and which have "drawn off many students from professorial lectures;" on "examiners not habitually pursuing particular studies, and whose knowledge, therefore, has no fulness, richness, depth, or variety;" also on private tutors having no ostensible and responsible situation in the university, and the tendency of modern changes to throw the whole academical education into their hands and those of the public examiners (*ibid.* ch. ii.); which may lead us to infer that the optimism of the Master of Trinity is not of that uncompromising kind which should make us despair of his co-operation in all future academical reforms.

In considering the present state of feeling towards science and its cultivators in England, I cannot refrain from citing a passage (with the leave of both the correspondents) from a letter dated February, 1845, addressed by Professor Liebig to Mr. Faraday:—

"What struck me most in England was the perception that only those works that have a practical tendency awake attention, and command respect, while the purely scientific, which possess far greater merit, are almost unknown. And yet the latter are the proper and true source from which the others flow. Practice



alone can never lead to the discovery of a truth or a principle. In Germany, it is quite the contrary. Here, in the eyes of scientific men, no value, or at least but a trifling one, is placed on the practical results. The enrichment of science is alone considered worthy of attention. I do not mean to say that this is better; for both nations the *golden medium* would certainly be a real good fortune."

What I have said of the method and course of instruction now pursued in our principal universities will, I think, explain in no small degree the prevalence of the utilitarian spirit, so correctly pointed out by this distinguished foreigner, and the want of a due appreciation of the higher and more difficult departments of philosophical research. From what source is the public at large, whether belonging to the upper or middle classes, to imbibe a respect and veneration for those who are engrossed in the pursuit of philosophical truth, and who live excluded from active life, if they who direct university education do not foster, nay, if they positively discourage, the teaching of the progressive sciences? How can the multitude learn, that, for one mind willing or capable of patiently working out and discovering a new truth or principle, there are hundreds who can apply to practice these principles, when once ascertained? Nothing can be more short-sighted, therefore, even on purely utilitarian grounds, than the usual policy of the herd of *cui bono* philosophers, who award higher honours and emoluments to the application than to the discovery of scientific principles.

It is truly fortunate that, in proportion as Oxford and Cambridge have withdrawn their countenance more and more from studies connected with physical science



and natural history, the wants of a high state of civilization, and the spirit of the age, have afforded to them in England an annually increasing patronage. It is felt that astronomy is indispensable to navigation, chemistry to agriculture and various arts, geology to mining, botany to medicine, and so of other departments. If the practical connection of any branch of science be not obvious, as in the case of zoology, scarcely any encouragement is given to it in any English place of education; but even here, fortunately, the British Museum and the College of Surgeons, by their extensive collections, step in, and in some degree supply the deficiency.

After the rejection at Oxford of the moderate measure of reform proposed in 1839, for combining together the professorial and tutorial systems, we can scarcely hope that any movement from within will effect the changes so loudly called for. Time will, year after year, remove the older members of Convocation, who are favourable to more enlarged views, and will replace them, it must be feared, by the avowed partizans of the narrower system of study, adopted in more modern times, and under which they have been brought up. Appeal under such circumstances must therefore be made to an external authority. A royal commission like those which have more than once visited of late years the universities of Scotland, might prove a sufficient counterpoise to the power and *vis inertiae* of forty learned corporations. They might suggest such remedies as the licensing of new Halls, the removal of tests on matriculation, the awarding of honorary distinctions for proficiency in the subjects of the professorial lectures, and many others, which would doubtless be welcomed



by the more enlightened members of Convocation. Fortunately, no violent innovations are called for, no new endowments, or grants of money. The commissioners would have to recommend the renovation of what has fallen into disuse—the improvement of the old rather than the introduction of new and experimental systems; they would have to give force to existing academical statutes, now inoperative, rather than to enact new laws. They might undertake university reform in the temper recommended by Dr. Whewell (p. 138.), “bringing to the task a spirit, not of hatred, but of reverence for the past, not of contempt, but of gratitude towards our predecessors.” No new fountains of knowledge are to be sought for in the depths of the earth; they are already at the surface, ready, on the removal of impediments, to overflow and fertilize the soil. When Lord Hastings conquered Delhi in 1817, he found an extensive wilderness near that city, sterile, and parched up by the sun’s heat, which had once been cultivated and populous; for in ancient times it had been irrigated by canals which brought the waters of the Jumna from a distance of 250 miles. The empire which had left these monuments of its ancient grandeur had long passed away, and having fallen to pieces, had formed a multitude of smaller kingdoms, each governed by feebler rulers. In a few years, by the aid of several thousand labourers, directed by skilful engineers, these ancient watercourses were repaired. They had been dry for two centuries and a half; and on the day appointed for the copious streams to flow once more through the streets of the ancient metropolis, the Hindoo priests went forth in solemn procession, while troops of virgins threw garlands of



flowers into the waters as they advanced. It was a day of national jubilee and thanksgiving, for the hand of a foreign power had restored to them the works of their forefathers.

But our ancient seats of learning, it will be said, so far from being depopulated, are full to overflowing. Oxford annually refuses to admit new students, because more cannot be accommodated within the college walls. Doubtless, the colleges are full, but can this be said of the university? Have Oxford and Cambridge kept pace, since the commencement of the present century, with the growth of the population, wealth, and desire of education, in the British empire? So many millions have been added to our population, that the clergy have, of necessity, increased in number, and the English bishops have more generally required academical degrees before ordination. This alone has caused a considerable augmentation of students. But is it not notorious that the expensive style of living, and the exclusion of branches of instruction connected with the future professions and individual tastes of students, have kept down the number of academicians? The sons of the aristocracy, and future divines, who, if poor, may eke out their academical income with scholarships and other endowments, constitute the mass of the undergraduates. The colleges have no desire to multiply the number of their pupils; they have already as many as they can teach. The academical fees, and the cost of board and lodging, are very reasonable; but the style of living is so high, that students with small incomes feel themselves in a false position: and this objection has operated far more than religious tests to check the natural increase of the universities.



Why, it may be asked, should we crowd all the British youth into two ancient seats of learning? Why not promote the growth of other institutions in London, Durham, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland? That such competition should be encouraged, I fully admit; but it will still be desirable that Oxford and Cambridge should expand freely, and that they should cease to serve as models of an exclusive and sectarian principle. Before the Reformation their spirit was catholic and national: since that period, they have dwindled, not into theological seminaries, for they have never in practice afforded a complete professional course for divinity students, but into places for educating the clergy of the Established Church, and the aristocratic portion of the laity professing the same form of Christianity. Such a system, coupled with the abandonment of professional studies in general, tends to dis sever throughout the country men of different callings, creeds, and professions. It has a dissociating influence. It separates during the period of youth the nobility and gentry from the higher portion of the middle classes, the barrister from the attorney, the physician from the surgeon, the legislators and lawyers of England from those civilians to whom the government of eighty millions in India is to be consigned, the members of the Anglican church from the Romanists of Stonyhurst or the Dissenters of Hackney, the civil engineers of Putney from the medical students of London. It disunites these and other sections of the same community, and throws them into antagonist masses, each keeping aloof from the other in cold and jealous seclusion, each cherishing sectarian or party animosities, or professional and social prejudices. Complaints are often heard, and not without reason, of



the harsh outlines that often separate the different grades of society in this country. It is in the season of youth, and when men are engaged in the common pursuit of knowledge,—especially if allowed as far as possible to follow the bent of their own tastes and genius,—that friendships might easily be formed tending to soften these hard outlines. At college, they would be brought together on neutral, and usually on friendly ground, where kindly feelings and sympathies would spring up spontaneously, and would be cherished in after-life by congenial souls, however distant the station, or distinct the religious opinions or professional employments of the former fellow-students.\*

\* While these sheets were passing through the press, an important discussion took place in the House of Commons, in consequence of a motion made April 10th, 1845, by Mr. Christie, M. P. for Weymouth, for a royal commission of enquiry into the state of education in the English universities. I have added and altered nothing since reading this debate, and it will be seen that while there is a coincidence in some of my views with those so ably advocated by many of the parliamentary speakers, there are other grounds taken up by me to which they have not alluded.

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.